

# Package ‘DECIPHER’

December 18, 2024

**Type** Package

**Title** Tools for curating, analyzing, and manipulating biological sequences

**Version** 3.3.1

**Date** 2024-11-29

**Author** Erik Wright

**Maintainer** Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**biocViews** Clustering, Genetics, Sequencing, DataImport, Visualization, Microarray, QualityControl, qPCR, Alignment, WholeGenome, Microbiome, ImmunoOncology, GenePrediction

**Description** A toolset for deciphering and managing biological sequences.

**Depends** R (>= 3.5.0), Biostrings (>= 2.59.1), stats

**Imports** methods, DBI, S4Vectors, IRanges, XVector

**Suggests** RSQLite (>= 1.1)

**LinkingTo** Biostrings, S4Vectors, IRanges, XVector

**License** GPL-3

**ByteCompile** true

**URL** <http://DECIPHER.codes>

**git\_url** <https://git.bioconductor.org/packages/DECIPHER>

**git\_branch** devel

**git\_last\_commit** f917790

**git\_last\_commit\_date** 2024-11-29

**Repository** Bioconductor 3.21

**Date/Publication** 2024-12-18

## Contents

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| DECIPHER-package . . . . .         | 4   |
| AA_REDUCED . . . . .               | 6   |
| Add2DB . . . . .                   | 7   |
| AdjustAlignment . . . . .          | 9   |
| AlignDB . . . . .                  | 11  |
| AlignPairs . . . . .               | 14  |
| AlignProfiles . . . . .            | 17  |
| AlignSeqs . . . . .                | 21  |
| AlignSynteny . . . . .             | 24  |
| AlignTranslation . . . . .         | 26  |
| AmplifyDNA . . . . .               | 28  |
| Array2Matrix . . . . .             | 30  |
| BLOSUM . . . . .                   | 31  |
| BrowseDB . . . . .                 | 32  |
| BrowseSeqs . . . . .               | 34  |
| CalculateEfficiencyArray . . . . . | 38  |
| CalculateEfficiencyFISH . . . . .  | 40  |
| CalculateEfficiencyPCR . . . . .   | 41  |
| Clusterize . . . . .               | 43  |
| Codec . . . . .                    | 48  |
| ConsensusSequence . . . . .        | 49  |
| Cophenetic . . . . .               | 52  |
| CorrectFrameshifts . . . . .       | 53  |
| CreateChimeras . . . . .           | 56  |
| DB2Seqs . . . . .                  | 58  |
| deltaGrules . . . . .              | 60  |
| deltaGrulesRNA . . . . .           | 61  |
| deltaHrules . . . . .              | 62  |
| deltaHrulesRNA . . . . .           | 63  |
| deltaSrules . . . . .              | 64  |
| deltaSrulesRNA . . . . .           | 65  |
| DesignArray . . . . .              | 66  |
| DesignPrimers . . . . .            | 68  |
| DesignProbes . . . . .             | 72  |
| DesignSignatures . . . . .         | 75  |
| DetectRepeats . . . . .            | 79  |
| DigestDNA . . . . .                | 83  |
| Disambiguate . . . . .             | 84  |
| DistanceMatrix . . . . .           | 86  |
| ExtractGenes . . . . .             | 92  |
| FindChimeras . . . . .             | 93  |
| FindGenes . . . . .                | 96  |
| FindNonCoding . . . . .            | 98  |
| FindSynteny . . . . .              | 99  |
| FormGroups . . . . .               | 102 |
| Genes . . . . .                    | 103 |

|                               |     |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| HEC_MI . . . . .              | 105 |
| IdConsensus . . . . .         | 107 |
| IdentifyByRank . . . . .      | 108 |
| IdLengths . . . . .           | 110 |
| IdTaxa . . . . .              | 111 |
| IndexSeqs . . . . .           | 114 |
| InvertedIndex . . . . .       | 117 |
| LearnNonCoding . . . . .      | 118 |
| LearnTaxa . . . . .           | 120 |
| MapCharacters . . . . .       | 123 |
| MaskAlignment . . . . .       | 126 |
| MeltDNA . . . . .             | 128 |
| MIQS . . . . .                | 130 |
| MMLSUM . . . . .              | 131 |
| MODELS . . . . .              | 132 |
| NNLS . . . . .                | 136 |
| NonCoding . . . . .           | 137 |
| NonCodingRNA . . . . .        | 138 |
| OrientNucleotides . . . . .   | 139 |
| PAM . . . . .                 | 141 |
| PFASUM . . . . .              | 142 |
| PredictDBN . . . . .          | 143 |
| PredictHEC . . . . .          | 147 |
| ReadDendrogram . . . . .      | 149 |
| RemoveGaps . . . . .          | 150 |
| RESTRICTION_ENZYMES . . . . . | 151 |
| ScoreAlignment . . . . .      | 152 |
| SearchDB . . . . .            | 154 |
| SearchIndex . . . . .         | 156 |
| Seqs2DB . . . . .             | 159 |
| StaggerAlignment . . . . .    | 161 |
| Synteny . . . . .             | 163 |
| Taxa . . . . .                | 166 |
| TerminalChar . . . . .        | 168 |
| TileSeqs . . . . .            | 169 |
| TrainingSet_16S . . . . .     | 171 |
| Treeline . . . . .            | 172 |
| TrimDNA . . . . .             | 179 |
| WriteDendrogram . . . . .     | 182 |
| WriteGenes . . . . .          | 184 |

DECIPHER-package

*Tools for curating, analyzing, and manipulating biological sequences***Description**

DECIPHER is a software toolset that can be used for deciphering and managing biological sequences efficiently using the R statistical programming language. The program is designed to be used with non-destructive workflows for importing, maintaining, analyzing, manipulating, and exporting a massive amount of sequences.

**Details**

Package: DECIPHER  
 Type: Package  
 Depends: R (>= 3.5.0), Biostrings (>= 2.59.1), stats, parallel  
 Imports: methods, DBI, S4Vectors, IRanges, XVector  
 Suggests: RSQLite (>= 1.1)  
 LinkingTo: Biostrings, S4Vectors, IRanges, XVector  
 License: GPL-3  
 LazyLoad: yes

**Index:**

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| AA_REDUCED               | Reduced amino acid alphabets  |
| Add2DB                   | Add Data to a Database  |
| AdjustAlignment          | Improve An Existing Alignment By Adjusting Gap Placements           |
| AlignDB                  | Align Two Sets of Aligned Sequences in a Sequence Database          |
| AlignPairs               | Align pairs of sequences  |
| AlignProfiles            | Align Two Sets of Aligned Sequences                                 |
| AlignSeqs                | Align a Set of Unaligned Sequences                                  |
| AlignSynteny             | Pairwise Aligns Syntenic Blocks                                     |
| AlignTranslation         | Align Sequences By Their Amino Acid Translation                     |
| AmplifyDNA               | Simulate Amplification of DNA by PCR                                |
| Array2Matrix             | Create a Matrix Representation of a Microarray                      |
| BLOSUM                   | BLOSUM Amino Acid Substitution Matrices                             |
| BrowseDB                 | View a Database Table in a Web Browser                              |
| BrowseSeqs               | View Sequences in a Web Browser                                     |
| CalculateEfficiencyArray | Predict the Hybridization Efficiency of Probe/Target Sequence Pairs |
| CalculateEfficiencyFISH  | Predict Thermodynamic Parameters of Probe/Target Sequence Pairs     |
| CalculateEfficiencyPCR   | Predict Amplification Efficiency of Primer Sequences                |
| Clusterize               | Cluster Sequences By Distance                                       |

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| Codec               | Compression/Decompression of Character Vectors                         |
| ConsensusSequence   | Create a Consensus Sequence  |
| Cophenetic          | Compute cophenetic distances on dendrogram objects                     |
| CorrectFrameshifts  | Corrects Frameshift Errors In Protein Coding Sequences                 |
| CreateChimeras      | Create Artificial Chimeras   |
| DB2Seqs             | Export Database Sequences to a FASTA or FASTQ File                     |
| deltaGrules         | Free Energy of Hybridization of Probe/Target Quadruplets               |
| deltaHrules         | Change in Enthalpy of Hybridization of DNA/DNA Quadruplets in Solution |
| deltaHrulesRNA      | Change in Enthalpy of Hybridization of RNA/RNA Quadruplets in Solution |
| deltaSrules         | Change in Entropy of Hybridization of DNA/DNA Quadruplets in Solution  |
| deltaSrulesRNA      | Change in Entropy of Hybridization of RNA/RNA Quadruplets in Solution  |
| DesignArray         | Design a Set of DNA Microarray Probes for Detecting Sequences          |
| DesignPrimers       | Design Primers Targeting a Specific Group of Sequences                 |
| DesignProbes        | Design FISH Probes Targeting a Specific Group of Sequences             |
| DesignSignatures    | Design PCR Primers for Amplifying Group-Specific Signatures            |
| DetectRepeats       | Detect Repeats in a Sequence   |
| DigestDNA           | Simulate Restriction Digestion of DNA                                  |
| Disambiguate        | Expand Ambiguities into All Permutations of a DNAStrngSet              |
| DistanceMatrix      | Calculate the Distance Between Sequences                               |
| ExtractGenes        | Extract Predicted Genes from a Genome                                  |
| FindChimeras        | Find Chimeras in a Sequence Database                                   |
| FindGenes           | Find Genes in a Genome   |
| FindNonCoding       | Find Non-Coding RNAs in a Genome                                       |
| FindSynteny         | Finds Synteny in a Sequence Database                                   |
| FormGroups          | Forms Groups By Rank   |
| Genes-class         | Genes objects and accessors  |
| HEC_MI              | Mutual Information for Protein Secondary Structure Prediction          |
| IdConsensus         | Create Consensus Sequences by Groups                                   |
| IdentifyByRank      | Identify By Taxonomic Rank   |
| IdLengths           | Determine the Number of Characters in Each Sequence of Each Sequence   |
| IdTaxa              | Assign Sequences a Taxonomic Classification                            |
| IndexSeqs           | Build an inverted index  |
| InvertedIndex-class | InvertedIndex objects  |
| LearnNonCoding      | Learn a Non-Coding RNA Model   |
| LearnTaxa           | Train a Classifier for Assigning Taxonomy                              |

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| MapCharacters       | Map Changes in Ancestral Character States  |
| MaskAlignment       | Mask Highly Variable Regions of An Alignment                                       |
| MeltDNA             | Simulate Melting of DNA  |
| MIQS                | MIQS Amino Acid Substitution Matrix  |
| MMLSUM              | MMLSUM Amino Acid Substitution Matrices  |
| MODELS              | Available Models of Sequence Evolution   |
| NNLS                | Sequential Coordinate-wise Algorithm for the<br>Non-negative Least Squares Problem |
| NonCoding           | NonCoding Models for Common Non-Coding RNA Families                                |
| NonCoding-class     | NonCoding Objects and Methods  |
| OrientNucleotides   | Orient Nucleotide Sequences  |
| PAM                 | PAM Amino Acid Substitution Matrices   |
| PFASUM              | PFASUM Amino Acid Substitution Matrices  |
| PredictDBN          | Predict RNA Secondary Structure in Dot-Bracket<br>Notation                         |
| PredictHEC          | Predict Protein Secondary Structure  |
| Read Dendrogram     | Read a Dendrogram from a Newick Formatted File                                     |
| RemoveGaps          | Remove Gap Characters in Sequences   |
| RESTRICTION_ENZYMES | Common Restriction Enzyme's Cut Sites  |
| ScoreAlignment      | Score a Multiple Sequence Alignment  |
| SearchDB            | Obtain Specific Sequences from a Database  |
| SearchIndex         | Search an inverted index   |
| Seqs2DB             | Add Sequences from Text File to Database   |
| StaggerAlignment    | Produce a Staggered Alignment  |
| Synteny-class       | Synteny blocks and hits  |
| Taxa-class          | Taxa training and testing objects  |
| TerminalChar        | Determine the Number of Terminal Characters  |
| TileSeqs            | Form a Set of Tiles for Each Group of Sequences                                    |
| TrainingSet_16S     | Training Set for Classification of 16S rRNA Gene<br>Sequences                      |
| Treeline            | Construct a Phylogenetic Tree  |
| TrimDNA             | Trims DNA Sequences to the High Quality Region<br>Between Patterns                 |
| WriteDendrogram     | Write a Dendrogram to Newick Format  |
| WriteGenes          | Write Genes to a File  |

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright

Maintainer: Erik Wright &lt;eswright@pitt.edu&gt;

AA\_REDUCED

*Reduced amino acid alphabets***Description**

The AA\_REDUCED list contains reductions of the standard amino acid alphabet (AA\_STANDARD).

## Usage

```
AA_REDUCED
```

## Details

Reduced amino alphabets can sometimes improve sensitivity and specificity of finding homologous matches between amino acid sequences. The first 12 AA\_REDUCED alphabets were optimized for finding synteny between genomic sequences. The next 113 alphabets are from a review of published amino acid alphabets (Solis, 2015). The following 17 alphabets were optimized for amino acid classification. The subsequent 18 alphabets are progressive mergers based on average similarities in PFASUM. The following 25 alphabets were optimized for protein search. The final 8 alphabets were optimized for clustering.

## References

Solis, A. (2015). Amino acid alphabet reduction preserves fold information contained in contact interactions in proteins. *Proteins: Structure, Function, and Genetics*, **83(12)**, 2198-2216.

## See Also

[FindSynteny](#), [LearnTaxa](#), [PFASUM](#)

## Examples

```
str(AA_REDUCED)
AA_REDUCED[[1]]
```

---

Add2DB

*Add Data to a Database*

---

## Description

Adds a data.frame to a database table by its row.names.

## Usage

```
Add2DB(myData,
        dbFile,
        tblName = "Seqs",
        clause = "",
        verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| myData  | Data frame containing information to be added to the dbFile.                                      |
| dbFile  | A database connection object or a character string specifying the path to a SQLite database file. |
| tblName | Character string specifying the table in which to add the data.                                   |
| clause  | An optional character string to append to the query as part of a “where clause”.                  |
| verbose | Logical indicating whether to display each query as it is sent to the database.                   |

**Details**

Data contained in myData will be added to the tblName by its respective row.names.

**Value**

Returns TRUE if the data was added successfully, or FALSE otherwise.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**References**

ES Wright (2016) "Using DECIPHER v2.0 to Analyze Big Biological Sequence Data in R". The R Journal, **8(1)**, 352-359.

**See Also**

[Seqs2DB](#), [SearchDB](#), [BrowseDB](#)

**Examples**

```
if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {
  # Create a sequence database
  gen <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.gen", package="DECIPHER")
  dbConn <- dbConnect(dbDriver("SQLite"), ":memory:")
  Seqs2DB(gen, "GenBank", dbConn, "Bacteria")

  # Identify the sequence lengths
  l <- IdLengths(dbConn)

  # Add lengths to the database
  Add2DB(l, dbConn)

  # View the added lengths
  BrowseDB(dbConn)

  # Change the value of existing columns
  ids <- data.frame(identifier=rep("Bacteroidetes", 18), stringsAsFactors=FALSE)
  rownames(ids) <- 10:27
  Add2DB(ids, dbConn)
}
```



```

BrowseDB(dbConn)

# Add data to a subset of rows using a clause
ids[[1]][[]] <- "Changed"
nrow(ids) # 18 rows
Add2DB(ids, dbConn, clause="accession like 'EU808318%")
BrowseDB(dbConn) # only 1 row effected

dbDisconnect(dbConn)
}

```

AdjustAlignment

*Improve An Existing Alignment By Adjusting Gap Placements***Description**

Makes small adjustments by shifting groups of gaps left and right to find their optimal positioning in a multiple sequence alignment.

**Usage**

```

AdjustAlignment(myXStringSet,
               perfectMatch = 2,
               misMatch = -1,
               gapLetter = -3,
               gapOpening = -0.1,
               gapExtension = 0,
               substitutionMatrix = NULL,
               shiftPenalty = -0.2,
               threshold = 0.1,
               weight = 1,
               processors = 1)

```

**Arguments**

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| myXStringSet | An AStringSet, DNStringSet, or RNStringSet object of aligned sequences.   |
| perfectMatch | Numeric giving the reward for aligning two matching nucleotides in the alignment. Only used for DNStringSet or RNStringSet inputs.                                  |
| misMatch     | Numeric giving the cost for aligning two mismatched nucleotides in the alignment. Only used for DNStringSet or RNStringSet inputs.                                  |
| gapLetter    | Numeric giving the cost for aligning gaps to letters. A lower value (more negative) encourages the overlapping of gaps across different sequences in the alignment. |
| gapOpening   | Numeric giving the cost for opening or closing a gap in the alignment.  |
| gapExtension | Numeric giving the cost for extending an open gap in the alignment.   |

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| substitutionMatrix | Either a substitution matrix representing the substitution scores for an alignment (in third-bits) or the name of the amino acid substitution matrix to use in alignment. The default (NULL) will use the perfectMatch and misMatch penalties for DNA/RNA or PFASUM50 for AA. |
| shiftPenalty       | Numeric giving the cost for every additional position that a group of gaps is shifted.  |
| threshold          | Numeric specifying the improvement in score required to permanently apply an adjustment to the alignment.   |
| weight             | A numeric vector of weights for each sequence, or a single number implying equal weights.   |
| processors         | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |

## Details

The process of multiple sequence alignment often results in the integration of small imperfections into the final alignment. Some of these errors are obvious by-eye, which encourages manual refinement of automatically generated alignments. However, the manual refinement process is inherently subjective and time consuming. AdjustAlignment refines an existing alignment in a process similar to that which might be applied manually, but in a repeatable and much faster fashion. This function shifts all of the gaps in an alignment to the left and right to find their optimal positioning. The optimal position is defined as the position that maximizes the alignment “score”, which is determined by the input parameters. The resulting alignment will be similar to the input alignment but with many imperfections eliminated. Note that the affine gap penalties here are different from the more flexible penalties used in [AlignProfiles](#), and have been optimized independently.

## Value

An XStringSet of aligned sequences.

## Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

## References

- Wright, E. S. (2015). DECIPHER: harnessing local sequence context to improve protein multiple sequence alignment. *BMC Bioinformatics*, 16, 322. <http://doi.org/10.1186/s12859-015-0749-z>
- Wright, E. S. (2020). RNAconTest: comparing tools for noncoding RNA multiple sequence alignment based on structural consistency. *RNA* 2020, 26, 531-540.

## See Also

[AlignSeqs](#), [AlignTranslation](#), [PFASUM](#), [StaggerAlignment](#)

**Examples**

```
# a trivial example
aa <- AAStringSet(c("ARN-PK", "ARRP-K"))
aa # input alignment
AdjustAlignment(aa) # output alignment

# specifying an alternative substitution matrix
AdjustAlignment(aa, substitutionMatrix="BLOSUM62")

# a real example
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Streptomyces_ITS_aligned.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNASTringSet(fas)
dna # input alignment
adjustedDNA <- AdjustAlignment(dna) # output alignment
BrowseSeqs(adjustedDNA, highlight=1)
adjustedDNA==dna # most sequences were adjusted (those marked FALSE)
```

---

AlignDB

*Align Two Sets of Aligned Sequences in a Sequence Database*

---

**Description**

Merges the two separate sequence alignments in a database. The aligned sequences must have separate identifiers in the same table or be located in different database tables.

**Usage**

```
AlignDB(dbFile,
        tblName = "Seqs",
        identifier = "",
        type = "DNASTringSet",
        add2tbl = "Seqs",
        batchSize = 10000,
        perfectMatch = 2,
        misMatch = -1,
        gapOpening = -12,
        gapExtension = -3,
        gapPower = -1,
        terminalGap = -4,
        normPower = c(1, 0),
        standardize = TRUE,
        substitutionMatrix = NULL,
        processors = 1,
        verbose = TRUE,
        ...)
```

**Arguments**

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| dbFile             | A database connection object or a character string specifying the path to a SQLite database file.  |
| tblName            | Character string specifying the table(s) where the sequences are located. If two tblNames are provided then the sequences in both tables will be aligned.  |
| identifier         | Optional character string used to narrow the search results to those matching a specific identifier. If "" then all identifiers are selected. If two identifiers are provided then the set of sequences matching each identifier will be aligned.  |
| type               | The type of XStringSet being processed. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "AAStringSet", "DNAStringSet", or "RNAStringSet".   |
| add2tbl            | Character string specifying the table name in which to add the aligned sequences.  |
| batchSize          | Integer specifying the number of sequences to process at a time.   |
| perfectMatch       | Numeric giving the reward for aligning two matching nucleotides in the alignment. Only used when type is DNAStringSet or RNAStringSet.   |
| misMatch           | Numeric giving the cost for aligning two mismatched nucleotides in the alignment. Only used when type is DNAStringSet or RNAStringSet.   |
| gapOpening         | Numeric giving the cost for opening a gap in the alignment.  |
| gapExtension       | Numeric giving the cost for extending an open gap in the alignment.  |
| gapPower           | Numeric specifying the exponent to use in the gap cost function.   |
| terminalGap        | Numeric giving the cost for allowing leading and trailing gaps ("- or ." characters) in the alignment. Either two numbers, the first for leading gaps and the second for trailing gaps, or a single number for both.   |
| normPower          | Numeric giving the exponent that controls the degree of normalization applied to scores by column occupancy. If two numerics are provided, the first controls the normalization power of terminal gaps, while the second controls that of internal gaps. A normPower of 0 does not normalize the scores, which results in all columns of the profiles being weighted equally, and is the optimal value for aligning fragmentary sequences. A normPower of 1 normalizes the score for aligning two positions by their column occupancy (1 - fraction of gaps). A normPower greater than 1 more strongly discourages aligning with "gappy" regions of the alignment. |
| standardize        | Logical determining whether scores are standardized to be in units of per matching site. Standardization effectively divides the score of each possible alignment by its length so that scores are relative rather than absolute.  |
| substitutionMatrix | Either a substitution matrix representing the substitution scores for an alignment (in third-bits) or the name of the amino acid substitution matrix to use in alignment. The default (NULL) will use the perfectMatch and misMatch penalties for DNA/RNA or PFASUM50 for AA.  |
| processors         | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.   |
| verbose            | Logical indicating whether to display progress.  |
| ...                | Further arguments to be passed directly to <a href="#">Codec</a> .   |

**Details**

Sometimes it is useful to align two large sets of sequences, where each set of sequences is already aligned but the two sets are not aligned to each other. AlignDB first builds a profile of each sequence set in increments of batchSize so that the entire sequence set is not required to fit in memory. Next the two profiles are aligned using dynamic programming. Finally, the new alignment is applied to all the sequences as they are incrementally added to the add2tbl.

Two identifiers or tblNames must be provided, indicating the two sets of sequences to align. The sequences corresponding to the first identifier and tblName will be aligned to those of the second identifier or tblName. The aligned sequences are added to add2tbl under a new identifier formed from the concatenation of the two identifiers or tblNames. (See examples section below.)

**Value**

Returns the number of newly aligned sequences added to the database.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**References**

Wright, E. S. (2015). DECIPHER: harnessing local sequence context to improve protein multiple sequence alignment. *BMC Bioinformatics*, 16, 322. <http://doi.org/10.1186/s12859-015-0749-z>

Wright, E. S. (2020). RNAconTest: comparing tools for noncoding RNA multiple sequence alignment based on structural consistency. *RNA* 2020, 26, 531-540.

**See Also**

[AlignProfiles](#), [AlignSeqs](#), [AlignTranslation](#), [PFASUM](#)

**Examples**

```
if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {
  gen <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.gen", package="DECIPHER")
  fas <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.fas", package="DECIPHER")

  # Align two tables and place result into a third
  dbConn <- dbConnect(dbDriver("SQLite"), ":memory:")
  Seqs2DB(gen, "GenBank", dbConn, "Seqs1", tblName="Set1")
  Seqs2DB(fas, "FASTA", dbConn, "Seqs2", tblName="Set2")
  AlignDB(dbConn, tblName=c("Set1", "Set2"), add2tbl="AlignedSets")
  l <- IdLengths(dbConn, "AlignedSets", add2tbl=TRUE)
  BrowseDB(dbConn, tblName="AlignedSets") # all sequences have the same width
  dbDisconnect(dbConn)

  # Align two identifiers and place the result in the same table
  dbConn <- dbConnect(dbDriver("SQLite"), ":memory:")
  Seqs2DB(gen, "GenBank", dbConn, "Seqs1")
  Seqs2DB(fas, "FASTA", dbConn, "Seqs2")
}
```

```
AlignDB(dbConn, identifier=c("Seqs1", "Seqs2"))
l <- IdLengths(dbConn, add2tbl=TRUE)
BrowseDB(dbConn) # note the sequences with a new identifier
dbDisconnect(dbConn)
}
```

---

AlignPairs

*Align pairs of sequences*


---

### Description

Aligns pairs of sequences globally or locally using anchored adaptive banding.

### Usage

```
AlignPairs(pattern,
            subject,
            pairs = NULL,
            type = "values",
            perfectMatch = 2,
            misMatch = -1,
            gapOpening = -16,
            gapExtension = -1.2,
            substitutionMatrix = NULL,
            bandwidth = 50,
            dropScore = -100,
            processors = 1,
            verbose = TRUE)
```

### Arguments

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| pattern      | An AAStringSet, DNASTringSet, or RNASTringSet object of (unaligned) sequences.  |
| subject      | A XStringSet object of (unaligned) sequences matching the type of the pattern.  |
| pairs        | Either NULL or a data.frame with Pattern and Subject indices to align and, optionally, a Position column containing matrices of anchor ranges. If Position is provided then local alignment is performed around the anchors, unless virtual anchors are provided to force global alignment with terminal gap penalties. If pairs is NULL (the default) then global alignment of respective pattern and subject sequences is performed without terminal gap penalties. (See examples section below.) |
| type         | Character string indicating the type of output desired. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "values", "sequences", or "both". (See value section below.)   |
| perfectMatch | Numeric giving the reward for aligning matching nucleotides, which is used in the absence of a substitutionMatrix when the pattern is a DNASTringSet or RNASTringSet.   |

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <code>misMatch</code>           | Numeric determining the cost for aligning mismatched nucleotides, which is used in the absence of a <code>substitutionMatrix</code> when the <code>pattern</code> is a <code>DNAStringSet</code> or <code>RNAStringSet</code> .  |
| <code>gapOpening</code>         | Numeric giving the cost for opening a gap in the alignment.  |
| <code>gapExtension</code>       | Numeric giving the cost for extending an open gap in the alignment.  |
| <code>substitutionMatrix</code> | Either a substitution matrix representing the substitution scores for an alignment (in third-bits) or the name of the amino acid substitution matrix to use in alignment. The default (NULL) will use the <code>perfectMatch</code> and <code>misMatch</code> penalties for DNA/RNA or <code>PFASUM50</code> for amino acids including “U” (selenocysteine) and “O” (pyrrolysine) with scores of zero. |
| <code>bandWidth</code>          | Integer determining the number of positions included in the adaptive band, which should be at least as large as the largest expected insertion or deletion (i.e., <code>gap</code> ). Smaller values will accelerate alignment, potentially at the expense of accuracy.  |
| <code>dropScore</code>          | Numeric giving the decrease in score required to stop extending the region to the left or right of flanking anchors when performing local alignment. Lower values find longer alignments at the expense of speed.  |
| <code>processors</code>         | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.   |
| <code>verbose</code>            | Logical indicating whether to display progress.  |

## Details

Performs pairwise alignment of `pattern` and `subject` sequences, either in their respective pairs or as specified by `pairs`. Uses adaptive banding and (optionally) anchoring to accelerate the alignment. Unlike `AlignProfiles`, `AlignPairs` can perform local alignment around anchor positions to align local regions of the `pattern` and/or `subject` sequences. In the absence of anchors, `AlignPairs` performs global alignment without terminal gap penalties or with terminal gap penalties when virtual anchors are provided immediately outside the bounds of the sequences. (See examples section below.)

`AlignPairs` is designed to maximize speed, and provides slightly less accuracy than using `AlignProfiles` for pairwise alignment. Adaptive banding is applied with a fixed `bandWidth` to reduce memory consumption, rather than the dynamic band width used by `AlignProfiles`. There are a few other differences: `AlignPairs` applies affine rather than Zipfian gap penalties, there is no option to incorporate secondary structures, scores are not standardized by length, gap penalties are not modulated around specific residues, and any anchors must be supplied in `pairs` rather than determined automatically. For very dissimilar sequences, it is preferable to use `AlignTranslation` (best for coding sequences), `AlignSeqs` (best for nucleotide/protein sequences), or `AlignProfiles`.

`AlignPairs` does not output the pairwise alignments by default. Instead, it outputs statistics about the alignment and the position(s) of gaps in each sequence. This makes alignment more efficient because no sequences are copied. For many applications only the percent identity or number of gaps is needed, which can be calculated directly from the returned `data.frame`. However, the aligned sequences can also easily be obtained by setting `type` to “sequences”.

**Value**

If type is "values" (the default), a data.frame is returned with one alignment per input pattern or row of pairs if not NULL. Columns are defined as the sequences' index in pattern (Pattern), start position in the pattern sequence (PatternStart), end position in the pattern sequence (PatternEnd), index in the subject sequence (Subject), start position in the subject sequence (SubjectStart), end position in the subject sequence (SubjectEnd), number of matching positions in the alignment (Matches), number of mismatched positions in the alignment (Mismatches), total number of positions in the alignment (AlignmentLength), alignment score (Score), and the position/length of gaps in the pattern and subject (i.e., PatternGapPosition, PatternGapLength, SubjectGapPosition, & SubjectGapLength).

If type is "sequences", a list containing two components: the aligned pattern and subject.

If type is "both", a list with three components: the values, aligned pattern, and aligned subject.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**See Also**

[AlignProfiles](#), [IndexSeqs](#), [SearchIndex](#)

**Examples**

```
# import target sequences and build an inverted index
fas <- system.file("extdata", "PlanctobacteriaNamedGenes.fas.gz", package="DECIPHER")
target <- readAAStringSet(fas)
index <- IndexSeqs(target, K=6L)
index

# import query sequences and search the index
fas <- system.file("extdata", "50S_ribosomal_protein_L2.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNASTringSet(fas)
query <- translate(dna)
hits <- SearchIndex(query, index, scoreOnly=FALSE)
head(hits)
nrow(hits) # number of query/target pairs

# locally pairwise align the query/target pairs representing each hit
aligned <- AlignPairs(query, target, hits) # local alignment around hits
head(aligned)

# plot the percent identity of each alignment versus score
PIDs <- aligned$Matches/aligned$AlignmentLength
plot(PIDs, hits$Score) # versus the hit score
plot(PIDs, aligned$Score) # versus the alignment score

# plot the number of pattern gaps versus subject gaps per alignment
subjectGaps <- sapply(aligned$SubjectGapLength, sum)
patternGaps <- sapply(aligned$PatternGapLength, sum)
```



```

plot(subjectGaps, patternGaps, pch=16, col="#00000011")
abline(a=0, b=1) # identity line (y = x)

# extract the pairwise aligned regions
alignments <- AlignPairs(query, target, hits, type="sequences")
BrowseSeqs(c(alignments[[1]][1], alignments[[2]][1])) # view the first pair

# perform global pairwise alignment by creating virtual endpoint anchors
# virtual anchors are immediately out-of-bounds (positions 0 and width + 1)
# this causes gap opening/extension penalties to be applied at each terminus
hits$Position <- mapply(function(x, y, z)
  cbind(matrix(0L, 4), x, matrix(c(y, y, z, z), 4)),
  hits$Position,
  width(query)[hits$Pattern] + 1L,
  width(target)[hits$Subject] + 1L,
  SIMPLIFY=FALSE)
aligned <- AlignPairs(query, target, hits) # penalizes terminal gaps
head(aligned) # all alignments now span start to end of the sequences

# perform global pairwise alignment of sequences without anchors (approach 1)
pattern <- query[rep(1, length(query))] # first sequence repeated
subject <- query
aligned1 <- AlignPairs(pattern, subject) # no terminal gap penalties
head(aligned1)
# perform global pairwise alignment of sequences without anchors (approach 2)
pairs <- data.frame(Pattern=1L, Subject=seq_along(query))
aligned2 <- AlignPairs(query, query, pairs) # no terminal gap penalties
head(aligned2) # note the Pattern column is always 1 (first sequence)

```

---

AlignProfiles

*Align Two Sets of Aligned Sequences*


---

## Description

Aligns two sets of one or more aligned sequences by first generating representative profiles, then aligning the profiles with dynamic programming, and finally merging the two aligned sequence sets.

## Usage

```

AlignProfiles(pattern,
              subject,
              p.weight = 1,
              s.weight = 1,
              p.struct = NULL,
              s.struct = NULL,
              perfectMatch = 2,
              misMatch = -1,
              gapOpening = -12,
              gapExtension = -3,

```

```

gapPower = -1,
terminalGap = -4,
restrict = c(-1000, 2, 10),
anchor = 0.7,
normPower = c(1, 0),
standardize = TRUE,
substitutionMatrix = NULL,
structureMatrix = NULL,
processors = 1)

```

### Arguments

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| pattern      | An AStringSet, DNASTringSet, or RNASTringSet object of aligned sequences to use as the pattern.  |
| subject      | A XStringSet object of aligned sequences to use as the subject. Must match the type of the pattern.  |
| p.weight     | A numeric vector of weights for each sequence in the pattern to use in generating a profile, or a single number implying equal weights.  |
| s.weight     | A numeric vector of weights for each sequence in the subject to use in generating a profile, or a single number implying equal weights.  |
| p.struct     | Either NULL (the default), a matrix, or a list of matrices with one list element per sequence in the pattern. (See details section below.)   |
| s.struct     | Either NULL (the default), a matrix, or a list of matrices with one list element per sequence in the subject. (See details section below.)   |
| perfectMatch | Numeric giving the reward for aligning two matching nucleotides in the alignment. Only applicable for DNASTringSet or RNASTringSet inputs.   |
| misMatch     | Numeric giving the cost for aligning two mismatched nucleotides in the alignment. Only applicable for DNASTringSet or RNASTringSet inputs.   |
| gapOpening   | Numeric giving the cost for opening a gap in the alignment.  |
| gapExtension | Numeric giving the cost for extending an open gap in the alignment.  |
| gapPower     | Numeric specifying the exponent to use in the gap cost function. (See details section below.)  |
| terminalGap  | Numeric giving the cost for allowing leading and trailing gaps ("- or ." characters) in the alignment. Either two numbers, the first for leading gaps and the second for trailing gaps, or a single number for both.   |
| restrict     | Numeric vector of length three controlling the degree of restriction around ridge lines in the dynamic programming matrix. The first element determines the span of the region around a ridge that is considered during alignment. The default (-1000) will align most inputs that can reasonably be globally aligned without any loss in accuracy. Input sequences with high similarity could be more restricted (e.g., -500), whereas a pattern and subject with little overlap should be less restricted (e.g., -10000). The second element sets the minimum slope to either side of a ridge that is required to allow restriction at any point. The third element sets the minimum duration of the ridge required to begin restricting the matrix around the ridge. The duration of the ridge is defined as the number |

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
|                    | of consecutive positions meeting the first two conditions for restriction. (See details section below.)   |
| anchor             | Numeric giving the fraction of sequences with identical k-mers required to become an anchor point, or NA to not use anchors. Alternatively, a matrix specifying anchor regions. (See details section below.)  |
| normPower          | Numeric giving the exponent that controls the degree of normalization applied to scores by column occupancy. If two numerics are provided, the first controls the normalization power of terminal gaps, while the second controls that of internal gaps. A normPower of 0 does not normalize the scores, which results in all columns of the profiles being weighted equally, and is the optimal value for aligning fragmentary sequences. A normPower of 1 normalizes the score for aligning two positions by their column occupancy (1 - fraction of gaps). A normPower greater than 1 more strongly discourages aligning with “gappy” regions of the alignment. (See details section below.) |
| standardize        | Logical determining whether scores are standardized to be in units of per matching site. Standardization effectively divides the score of each possible alignment by its length so that scores are relative rather than absolute.   |
| substitutionMatrix | Either a substitution matrix representing the substitution scores for an alignment (in third-bits) or the name of the amino acid substitution matrix to use in alignment. The default (NULL) will use the perfectMatch and misMatch penalties for DNA/RNA or PFASUM50 for AA. (See examples section below.)   |
| structureMatrix    | A structure matrix if p.struct and s.struct are supplied, or NULL otherwise.  |
| processors         | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |

## Details

Profiles are aligned using dynamic programming, a variation of the Needleman-Wunsch algorithm for global alignment. The dynamic programming method requires order  $N \times M$  time and memory space where  $N$  and  $M$  are the width of the pattern and subject. This method works by filling in a matrix of the possible “alignment space” by considering all matches, insertions, and deletions between two sequence profiles. The highest scoring alignment is then used to add gaps to each of the input sequence sets.

Heuristics can be useful to improve performance on long input sequences. The `restrict` parameter can be used to dynamically constrain the possible “alignment space” to only paths that will likely include the final alignment, which in the best case can improve the speed from quadratic time to nearly linear time. The degree of restriction is important, and the default value of `restrict` is reasonable in the vast majority of cases. It is also possible to prevent restriction by setting `restrict` to such extreme values that these requirements will never be met (e.g., `c(-1e10, 1e10, 1e10)`).

The argument `anchor` can be used to split the global alignment into multiple sub-alignments. This can greatly decrease the memory requirement for long sequences when appropriate anchor points can be found. Anchors are 15-mer (for DNA/RNA) or 7-mer (for AA) subsequences that are shared between at least anchor fraction of `pattern(s)` and `subject(s)`. Anchored ranges are extended along the length of each sequence in a manner designed to split the alignment into sub-alignments

that can be separately solved. For most input sequences, the default anchoring has no effect on accuracy, but anchoring can be disabled by setting anchor=NA.

Alternatively, anchor can be a matrix with 4 rows and one column per anchor. The first two rows correspond to the anchor start and end positions in the pattern sequence(s), and the second two rows are the equivalent anchor region in the subject sequence(s). Anchors specified in this manner must be strictly increasing (non-overlapping) in both sequences, and have an anchor width of at least two positions. Note that the anchors do not have to be equal length, in which case the anchor regions will also be aligned. Manually splitting the alignment into more subtasks can sometimes make it more efficient, but typically automatic anchoring is effective.

The argument normPower determines how the distribution of information is treated during alignment. Higher values of normPower encourage alignment between columns with higher occupancy (1 - fraction of gaps), and de-emphasize the alignment of columns containing many gaps. A normPower of 0 will treat all columns equally regardless of occupancy, which can be useful when the pattern or subject contain many incomplete (fragment) sequences. For example, normPower should be set to 0 when aligning many short reads to a longer reference sequence.

The arguments p.struct and s.struct may be used to provide secondary structure probabilities in the form of a list containing matrices or a single matrix. If the input is a list, then each list element must contain a matrix with dimensions q\*w, where q is the number of possible secondary structure states, and w is the width of the unaligned pattern sequence. Values in each matrix represent the probability of the given state at that position in the sequence. Alternatively, a single matrix can be used as input if w is the width of the entire pattern or subject alignment. A structureMatrix must be supplied along with the structures. The functions PredictHEC and PredictDBN can be used to predict secondary structure probabilities in the format required by AlignProfiles (for amino acid and RNA sequences, respectively).

The gap cost function is based on the observation that gap lengths are best approximated by a Zipfian distribution (Chang & Benner, 2004). The cost of inserting a gap of length L is equal to: gapOpening + gapExtension\*sum(seq\_len(L - 1)^gapPower) when L > 1, and gapOpen when L = 1. This function effectively penalizes shorter gaps significantly more than longer gaps when gapPower < 0, and is equivalent to the affine gap penalty when gapPower is 0.

## Value

An XStringSet of aligned sequences.

## Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

## References

- Chang, M. S. S., & Benner, S. A. (2004). Empirical Analysis of Protein Insertions and Deletions Determining Parameters for the Correct Placement of Gaps in Protein Sequence Alignments. *Journal of Molecular Biology*, **341**(2), 617-631.
- Needleman, S., & Wunsch, C. (1970). A general method applicable to the search for similarities in the amino acid sequence of two proteins. *Journal of Molecular Biology*, **48**(3), 443-453.
- Wright, E. S. (2015). DECIPHER: harnessing local sequence context to improve protein multiple sequence alignment. *BMC Bioinformatics*, 16, 322. <http://doi.org/10.1186/s12859-015-0749-z>

Wright, E. S. (2020). RNAconTest: comparing tools for noncoding RNA multiple sequence alignment based on structural consistency. *RNA* 2020, 26, 531-540.

Yu, Y.-K., et al. (2015). Log-odds sequence logos. *Bioinformatics*, 31(3), 324-331. <http://doi.org/10.1093/bioinformatics/btu>

### See Also

[AlignDB](#), [AlignSeqs](#), [AlignSynteny](#), [AlignTranslation](#), [PFASUM](#), [MIQS](#)

### Examples

```
# align two sets of sequences
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna1 <- readDNASTringSet(fas, n=100) # the first 100 sequences
dna2 <- readDNASTringSet(fas, n=100, skip=100) # the rest
dna1 <- RemoveGaps(dna1, "common")
dna2 <- RemoveGaps(dna2, "common")
alignedDNA <- AlignProfiles(dna1, dna2)
BrowseSeqs(alignedDNA, highlight=1)

# specify a DNA substitution matrix
subMatrix <- matrix(0,
                    nrow=4, ncol=4,
                    dimnames=list(DNA_BASES, DNA_BASES))
diag(subMatrix) <- 5 # perfectMatch
alignedDNA.defaultSubM <- AlignProfiles(dna1, dna2, substitutionMatrix=subMatrix)
all(alignedDNA.defaultSubM==alignedDNA)

# specify a different DNA substitution matrix
subMatrix2 <- matrix(c(12, 3, 5, 3, 3, 12, 3, 6, 5, 3, 11, 3, 3, 6, 3, 9),
                    nrow=4, ncol=4,
                    dimnames=list(DNA_BASES, DNA_BASES))
alignedDNA.alterSubM <- AlignProfiles(dna1, dna2, substitutionMatrix=subMatrix2)
all(alignedDNA.alterSubM==alignedDNA)

# anchors are found automatically by default, but it is also
# possible to specify anchor regions between the sequences
anchors <- matrix(c(774, 788, 752, 766), nrow=4)
anchors
subseq(dna1, anchors[1, 1], anchors[2, 1])
subseq(dna2, anchors[3, 1], anchors[4, 1])
alignedDNA2 <- AlignProfiles(dna1, dna2, anchor=anchors)
```

---

AlignSeqs

*Align a Set of Unaligned Sequences*

---

### Description

Performs profile-to-profile alignment of multiple unaligned sequences following a guide tree.

**Usage**

```
AlignSeqs(myXStringSet,
          guideTree = NULL,
          iterations = 2,
          refinements = 1,
          gapOpening = c(-18, -10),
          gapExtension = -3,
          useStructures = TRUE,
          structures = NULL,
          FUN = AdjustAlignment,
          levels = c(0.9, 0.7, 0.7, 0.4, 10, 5, 5, 2),
          alphabet = AA_REDUCED[[1]],
          processors = 1,
          verbose = TRUE,
          ...)
```

**Arguments**

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code>myXStringSet</code>  | An <code>AAStringSet</code> , <code>DNAStringSet</code> , or <code>RNAStringSet</code> object of unaligned sequences.  |
| <code>guideTree</code>     | Either <code>NULL</code> or a dendrogram giving the ordered tree structure in which to align profiles. If <code>NULL</code> then a guide tree will be automatically constructed based on the order of shared k-mers.   |
| <code>iterations</code>    | Number of iteration steps to perform. During each iteration step the guide tree is regenerated based on the alignment and the sequences are realigned.   |
| <code>refinements</code>   | Number of refinement steps to perform. During each refinement step groups of sequences are realigned to rest of the sequences, and the best of these two alignments (before and after realignment) is kept.  |
| <code>gapOpening</code>    | Single numeric giving the cost for opening a gap in the alignment, or two numbers giving the minimum and maximum costs. In the latter case the cost will be varied depending upon whether the groups of sequences being aligned are nearly identical or maximally distant.   |
| <code>gapExtension</code>  | Single numeric giving the cost for extending an open gap in the alignment, or two numbers giving the minimum and maximum costs. In the latter case the cost will be varied depending upon whether the groups of sequences being aligned are nearly identical or maximally distant.   |
| <code>useStructures</code> | Logical indicating whether to use secondary structure predictions during alignment. If <code>TRUE</code> (the default), secondary structure probabilities will be automatically calculated for amino acid and RNA sequences if they are not provided (i.e., when <code>structures</code> is <code>NULL</code> ).                                     |
| <code>structures</code>    | Either a list of secondary structure probabilities matching the <code>structureMatrix</code> , such as that output by <code>PredictHEC</code> or <code>PredictDBN</code> , or <code>NULL</code> to generate the structures automatically. Only applicable if <code>myXStringSet</code> is an <code>AAStringSet</code> or <code>RNAStringSet</code> . |
| <code>FUN</code>           | A function to be applied after each profile-to-profile alignment. (See details section below.)   |

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| levels     | Numeric with eight elements specifying the levels at which to trigger events. (See details section below.)  |
| alphabet   | Character vector of amino acid groupings used to reduce the 20 standard amino acids into smaller groups. Alphabet reduction helps to find more distant homologies between sequences. A non-reduced amino acid alphabet can be used by setting alphabet equal to AA_STANDARD. Only applicable if myXStringSet is an AAStringSet. |
| processors | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |
| verbose    | Logical indicating whether to display progress.   |
| ...        | Further arguments to be passed directly to <a href="#">AlignProfiles</a> , including perfectMatch, misMatch, gapPower, terminalGap, restrict, anchor, normPower, standardize, substitutionMatrix, and structureMatrix.  |

## Details

The profile-to-profile method aligns a sequence set by merging profiles along a guide tree until all the input sequences are aligned. This process has three main steps: (1) If `guideTree=NULL`, an initial single-linkage guide tree is constructed based on a distance matrix of shared k-mers. Alternatively, a dendrogram can be provided as the initial `guideTree`. (2) If `iterations` is greater than zero, then a UPGMA guide tree is built based on the initial alignment and the sequences are re-aligned along this tree. This process repeated `iterations` times or until convergence. (3) If `refinements` is greater than zero, then subsets of the alignment are re-aligned to the remainder of the alignment. This process generates two alignments, the best of which is chosen based on its sum-of-pairs score. This refinement process is repeated `refinements` times, or until convergence.

The purpose of `levels` is to speed-up the alignment process by not running time consuming processes when they are unlikely to change the outcome. The first four `levels` control when `refinements` occur and the function `FUN` is run on the alignment. The default `levels` specify that these events should happen when above 0.9 (AA; `levels[1]`) or 0.7 (DNA/RNA; `levels[3]`) average dissimilarity on the initial tree, when above 0.7 (AA; `levels[2]`) or 0.4 (DNA/RNA; `levels[4]`) average dissimilarity on the iterative tree(s), and after every tenth improvement made during refinement. The sixth element of `levels` (`levels[6]`) prevents `FUN` from being applied at any point to less than 5 sequences.

The `FUN` function is always applied before returning the alignment so long as there are at least `levels[6]` sequences. The default `FUN` is `AdjustAlignment`, but `FUN` can be any function that takes in an `XStringSet` as its first argument, as well as `weights`, `processors`, and `substitutionMatrix` as optional arguments. For example, the default `FUN` could be altered to not perform any changes by setting it equal to `function(x, ...) return(x)`, where `x` is an `XStringSet`.

Secondary structures are automatically computed for amino acid and RNA sequences unless `structures` are provided or `useStructures` is `FALSE`. Use of `structures` generally provides a moderate improvement in average accuracy on difficult-to-align sequences. The default `structureMatrix` is used unless an alternative is provided. For RNA sequences, consensus secondary structures are only computed when the total length of the initial guide tree is at least 5 (`levels[7]`) or the length of subsequent trees is at least 2 (`levels[8]`). Note that input `RNAStringSets` are assumed to be structured non-coding RNAs. Largely unstructured RNAs should be aligned with `useStructures` set to `FALSE` or, ideally, aligned with `AlignTranslation` if coding sequences (i.e., mRNAs).

**Value**

An XStringSet of aligned sequences.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**References**

Wright, E. S. (2015). DECIPHER: harnessing local sequence context to improve protein multiple sequence alignment. BMC Bioinformatics, 16, 322. <http://doi.org/10.1186/s12859-015-0749-z>

Wright, E. S. (2020). RNAconTest: comparing tools for noncoding RNA multiple sequence alignment based on structural consistency. RNA 2020, 26, 531-540.

**See Also**

[AdjustAlignment](#), [AlignDB](#), [AlignProfiles](#), [AlignSynteny](#), [AlignTranslation](#), [ReadDendrogram](#), [Treeline](#), [StaggerAlignment](#)

**Examples**

```
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNASTringSet(fas)
dna <- RemoveGaps(dna)
alignedDNA <- AlignSeqs(dna)
BrowseSeqs(alignedDNA, highlight=1)

# use secondary structure with RNA sequences
alignedRNA <- AlignSeqs(RNAStringSet(dna))
BrowseSeqs(alignedRNA, highlight=1)
```

---

AlignSynteny

*Pairwise Aligns Syntenic Blocks*

---

**Description**

Performs pairwise alignment of all blocks of synteny between sets of sequences.

**Usage**

```
AlignSynteny(synteny,
             dbFile,
             tblName = "Seqs",
             identifier = "",
             processors = 1,
             verbose = TRUE,
             ...)
```



**Arguments**

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| synteny    | An object of class “Synteny”.   |
| dbFile     | A database connection object or a character string specifying the path to a SQLite database file.   |
| tblName    | Character string specifying the table where the sequences are located that were used to create the object synteny.  |
| identifier | Optional character string used to narrow the search results to those matching a specific identifier, or an integer sequence corresponding to indices of rownames(synteny). If "" (the default), then all identifiers are selected from synteny. |
| processors | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |
| verbose    | Logical indicating whether to display progress.   |
| ...        | Further arguments to be passed directly to <a href="#">AlignProfiles</a> , including perfectMatch, mismatch, gapPower, terminalGap, restrict, normPower, and substitutionMatrix.  |

**Details**

AlignSynteny will extract all sequence regions belonging to syntenic blocks in synteny, and perform pairwise alignment with [AlignProfiles](#). Hits are used to anchor the alignment such that only the regions between anchors are aligned.

**Value**

A list with elements for each pair of identifiers in synteny. Each list element contains a `DNASetList` one pairwise alignment per syntenic block.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**See Also**

[FindSynteny](#), [Synteny-class](#)

**Examples**

```
if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {
  db <- system.file("extdata", "Influenza.sqlite", package="DECIPHER")
  synteny <- FindSynteny(db, minScore=50)
  DNA <- AlignSynteny(synteny, db)
  names(DNA)
  DNA[[1]] # the first set of pairwise alignments
  DNA[[1]][[1]] # the first block of synteny between H9N2 & H5N1
  unlist(DNA[[2]]) # a DNASetList of synteny between H9N2 & H2N2
}
```

---

AlignTranslation      *Align Sequences By Their Amino Acid Translation*

---

### Description

Performs alignment of a set of DNA or RNA sequences by aligning their corresponding amino acid sequences.

### Usage

```
AlignTranslation(myXStringSet,
                 sense = "+",
                 direction = "5' to 3'",
                 readingFrame = NA,
                 type = class(myXStringSet),
                 geneticCode = GENETIC_CODE,
                 ...)
```

### Arguments

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| myXStringSet | A DNASTringSet or RNASTringSet object of unaligned sequences.  |
| sense        | Single character specifying sense of the input sequences, either the positive ("+") coding strand or negative ("-") non-coding strand.   |
| direction    | Direction of the input sequences, either "5' to 3'" or "3' to 5'".   |
| readingFrame | Numeric vector giving a single reading frame for all of the sequences, or an individual reading frame for each sequence in myXStringSet. The readingFrame can be either 1, 2, 3 to begin translating on the first, second, and third nucleotide position, or NA (the default) to guess the reading frame. (See details section below.) |
| type         | Character string indicating the type of output desired. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "DNASTringSet", "RNASTringSet", "AAStringSet", or "both". (See value section below.)  |
| geneticCode  | Either a character vector giving the genetic code in the same format as GENETIC_CODE (the default), or a list containing one genetic code for each sequence in myXStringSet.   |
| ...          | Further arguments to be passed directly to <a href="#">AlignSeqs</a> , including gapOpening, gapExtension, gapPower, terminalGap, restrict, anchor, normPower, substitutionMatrix, structureMatrix, standardize, alphabet, guideTree, iterations, refinements, useStructures, structures, FUN, and levels.                             |

### Details

Alignment of proteins is often more accurate than alignment of their coding nucleic acid sequences. This function aligns the input nucleic acid sequences via aligning their translated amino acid sequences. First, the input sequences are translated according to the specified sense, direction, and readingFrame. The resulting amino acid sequences are aligned using [AlignSeqs](#), and this alignment is (conceptually) reverse translated into the original sequence type, sense, and direction.

Not only is alignment of protein sequences generally more accurate, but aligning translations will ensure that the reading frame is maintained in the nucleotide sequences.

If the `readingFrame` is NA (the default) then an attempt is made to guess the reading frame of each sequence based on the number of stop codons in the translated amino acids. For each sequence, the first reading frame will be chosen (either 1, 2, or 3) without stop codons, except in the final position. If the number of stop codons is inconclusive for a sequence then the reading frame will default to 1. The entire length of each sequence is translated in spite of any stop codons identified. Note that this method is only constructive in circumstances where there is a substantially long coding sequence with at most a single stop codon expected in the final position, and therefore it is preferable to specify the reading frame of each sequence if it is known.

### Value

An `XStringSet` of the class specified by `type`, or a list of two components (nucleotides and amino acids) if `type` is "both". Note that incomplete starting and ending codons will be translated into the mask character ("+") if the result includes an `AAStringSet`.

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### References

Wright, E. S. (2015). DECIPHER: harnessing local sequence context to improve protein multiple sequence alignment. *BMC Bioinformatics*, 16, 322. <http://doi.org/10.1186/s12859-015-0749-z>

### See Also

[AlignDB](#), [AlignProfiles](#), [AlignSeqs](#), [AlignSynteny](#), [CorrectFrameshifts](#)

### Examples

```
# first three sequences translate to MGFITP*
# and the last sequence translates as MGF-TP*
rna <- RNAStringSet(c("AUGGGUUUCAUCACCCCUAA", "AUGGGCUUCAUAACUCCUUGA",
  "AUGGGAUUCAUUACACCGUAG", "AUGGGUUUACCCCAUAA"))
RNA <- AlignSeqs(rna, verbose=FALSE)
RNA

RNA <- AlignTranslation(rna, verbose=FALSE)
RNA

AA <- AlignTranslation(rna, type="AAStringSet", verbose=FALSE)
AA

BOTH <- AlignTranslation(rna, type="both", verbose=FALSE)
BOTH

# example of aligning many protein coding sequences:
fas <- system.file("extdata", "50S_ribosomal_protein_L2.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNAStringSet(fas)
```

```

DNA <- AlignTranslation(dna) # align the translation then reverse translate
DNA

# using a mixture of standard and non-standard genetic codes
gC1 <- getGeneticCode(id_or_name2="1", full.search=FALSE, as.data.frame=FALSE)
# Mollicutes use an alternative genetic code
gC2 <- getGeneticCode(id_or_name2="4", full.search=FALSE, as.data.frame=FALSE)
w <- grep("Mycoplasma|Ureaplasma", names(dna))
gC <- vector("list", length(dna))
gC[-w] <- list(gC1)
gC[w] <- list(gC2)
AA <- AlignTranslation(dna, geneticCode=gC, type="AAStringSet")
BrowseSeqs(AA)

```

---

AmplifyDNA

*Simulate Amplification of DNA by PCR*


---

## Description

Predicts the amplification efficiency of theoretical PCR products (amplicons) given one or more primer sequences.

## Usage

```

AmplifyDNA(primers,
            myDNAStringSet,
            maxProductSize,
            annealingTemp,
            P,
            ions = 0.2,
            includePrimers=TRUE,
            minEfficiency = 0.001,
            ...)

```

## Arguments

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| primers        | A DNASTringSet object or character vector with one or more unaligned primer sequences in 5' to 3' orientation. |
| myDNAStringSet | A DNASTringSet object or character vector with unaligned template DNA sequences in 5' to 3' orientation.       |
| maxProductSize | Integer specifying the maximum length of PCR products (amplicons) in nucleotides.                              |
| annealingTemp  | Numeric specifying the annealing temperature used in the PCR reaction.   |
| P              | Numeric giving the molar concentration of primers in the reaction.   |
| ions           | Numeric giving the molar sodium equivalent ionic concentration. Values may range between 0.01M and 1M.         |

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>includePrimers</code> | Logical indicating whether to include the primer sequences in the theoretical PCR products. (See details section below.)  |
| <code>minEfficiency</code>  | Numeric giving the minimum amplification efficiency of PCR products to include in the output (default 0.1%). (See details section below.)   |
| <code>...</code>            | Additional arguments to be passed directly to <code>CalculateEfficiencyPCR</code> , including <code>batchSize</code> , <code>taqEfficiency</code> , <code>maxDistance</code> , <code>maxGaps</code> , and <code>processors</code> . |

## Details

Exponential amplification in PCR requires the annealing and elongation of two primers from target sites on opposing strands of the template DNA. If the template DNA sequence (e.g., chromosome) is known then predictions of theoretical amplicons can be obtained from in silico simulations of amplification. AmplifyDNA first searches for primer target sites on the template DNA, and then calculates an amplification efficiency from each target site using `CalculateEfficiencyPCR`. Ambiguity codes (IUPAC\_CODE\_MAP) are supported in the primers, but not in `myDNAStringSet` to prevent trivial matches (e.g., runs of N's).

If `taqEfficiency` is TRUE (the default), the amplification efficiency of each primer is defined as the product of hybridization efficiency and elongation efficiency. Amplification efficiency must be at least `minEfficiency` for a primer to be amplified in silico. Overall amplification efficiency of the PCR product is then calculated as the geometric mean of the two (i.e., forward and reverse) primers' efficiencies. Finally, amplicons are generated if the two primers are within `maxProductSize` nucleotides downstream of each other.

Potential PCR products are returned, either with or without including the primer sequences in the amplicon. The default (`includePrimers=TRUE`) is to incorporate the primer sequences as would normally occur during amplification. The alternative is to return the complete template sequence including the target sites, which may not exactly match the primer sequences. Note that amplicons may be duplicated when different input primers can amplify the same region of DNA.

## Value

A `DNAStrngSet` object containing potential PCR products, sorted from highest-to-lowest amplification efficiency. The sequences are named by their predicted amplification efficiency followed by the index of each primer in `primers` and the name (or index if names are missing) of the amplified sequence in `myDNAStringSet`. (See examples section below.)

## Note

The program `OligoArrayAux` (<http://www.unafold.org/Dinamelt/software/oligoarrayaux.php>) must be installed in a location accessible by the system. For example, the following code should print the installed `OligoArrayAux` version when executed from the R console:

```
system("hybrid-min -V")
```

## Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

## References

ES Wright et al. (2013) "Exploiting Extension Bias in PCR to Improve Primer Specificity in Ensembles of Nearly Identical DNA Templates." *Environmental Microbiology*, doi:10.1111/1462-2920.12259.

## See Also

[CalculateEfficiencyPCR](#), [DesignPrimers](#), [DesignSignatures](#), [MeltDNA](#)

## Examples

```
data(yeastSEQCHR1)

# not run (must have OligoArrayAux installed first):

# match a single primer that acts as both the forward and reverse
primer1 <- "TGGAAGCTGAAACG"
## Not run: AmplifyDNA(primer1, yeastSEQCHR1, annealingTemp=55, P=4e-7, maxProductSize=500)

# perform a typical amplification with two primer sequences:
primer2 <- c("GGCTGTTGTTGGTGT", "TGTCATCAGAACACCAA")
## Not run: AmplifyDNA(primer2, yeastSEQCHR1, annealingTemp=55, P=4e-7, maxProductSize=500)

# perform a multiplex PCR amplification with multiple primers:
primers <- c(primer1, primer2)
## Not run: AmplifyDNA(primers, yeastSEQCHR1, annealingTemp=55, P=4e-7, maxProductSize=500)
```

---

Array2Matrix

*Create a Matrix Representation of a Microarray*

---

## Description

Converts the output of DesignArray into the sparse matrix format used by NNLS.

## Usage

```
Array2Matrix(probes,
             verbose = TRUE)
```

## Arguments

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| probes  | A set of microarray probes in the format output by DesignArray. |
| verbose | Logical indicating whether to display progress.                 |

## Details

A microarray can be represented by a matrix of hybridization efficiencies, where the rows represent each of the probes and the columns represent each the possible templates. This matrix is sparse since microarray probes are designed to only target a small subset of the possible templates.

**Value**

A list specifying the hybridization efficiency of each probe to its potential templates.

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| i        | Element's row index in the sparse matrix.  |
| j        | Element's column index in the sparse matrix.                                       |
| x        | Non-zero elements' values representing hybridization efficiencies.                 |
| dimnames | A list of two components: the names of each probe, and the names of each template. |

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**References**

ES Wright et al. (2013) Identification of Bacterial and Archaeal Communities From Source to Tap. Water Research Foundation, Denver, CO.

DR Noguera, et al. (2014). Mathematical tools to optimize the design of oligonucleotide probes and primers. Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology. doi:10.1007/s00253-014-6165-x.

**See Also**

[DesignArray, NNLS](#)

**Examples**

```
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNASTringSet(fas)
names(dna) <- 1:length(dna)
probes <- DesignArray(dna)
A <- Array2Matrix(probes)
```

---

BLOSUM

*BLOSUM Amino Acid Substitution Matrices*

---

**Description**

The BLOSUM amino acid substitution matrices defined by Henikoff, S., & Henikoff, J. (1992).

**Usage**

```
data("BLOSUM")
```

**Format**

The format is: num [1:24, 1:24, 1:15] 2.4 -0.6 0 0 -1.8 0.6 0 0 -1.2 0 ... - attr(\*, "dimnames")=List of 3 ..\$ : chr [1:24] "A" "R" "N" "D" ... ..\$ : chr [1:24] "A" "R" "N" "D" ... ..\$ : chr [1:15] "30" "35" "40" "45" ...

## Details

Substitution matrix values represent the log-odds of observing an aligned pair of amino acids versus the likelihood of finding the pair by chance. The PFASUM substitution matrices are stored as an array named by each sub-matrix's similarity threshold. (See examples section below.) In all cases values are in units of third-bits ( $\log(\text{odds ratio}) * 3/\log(2)$ ).

## Source

Henikoff, S., & Henikoff, J. (1992). Amino Acid Substitution Matrices from Protein Blocks. *PNAS*, **89(22)**, 10915-10919.

## Examples

```
data(BLOSUM)
BLOSUM62 <- BLOSUM[, , "62"] # the BLOSUM62 matrix
BLOSUM62["A", "R"] # score for A/R pairing

data(PFASUM)
plot(PFASUM[1:20, 1:20, "62"], BLOSUM62[1:20, 1:20])
abline(a=0, b=1)
```

---

BrowseDB

*View a Database Table in a Web Browser*

---

## Description

Opens an html file in a web browser to show the contents of a table in a database.

## Usage

```
BrowseDB(dbFile,
         htmlFile = tempfile(fileext=".html"),
         openURL = interactive(),
         tblName = "Seqs",
         identifier = "",
         limit = -1,
         orderBy = "row_names",
         maxChars = 50,
         title = "",
         clause="")
```

## Arguments

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| dbFile   | A database connection object or a character string specifying the path to a SQLite database file. |
| htmlFile | Character string giving the location where the html file should be written.                       |
| openURL  | Logical indicating whether the htmlFile should be opened in a web browser.                        |



|            |  |
|------------|--|
| tblName    | Character string specifying the table to view.   |
| identifier | Optional character string used to narrow the search results to those matching a specific identifier. If "" then all identifiers are selected.  |
| limit      | Number of results to display. The default (-1) does not limit the number of results.   |
| orderBy    | Character string giving the column name for sorting the results. Defaults to the order of entries in the database. Optionally can be followed by "ASC" or "DESC" to specify ascending (the default) or descending order. |
| maxChars   | Maximum number of characters to display in each column.  |
| title      | Character string denoting a title that should appear at the top of the output or "" (the default) for no title.  |
| clause     | An optional character string to append to the query as part of a "where clause".   |

### Value

Creates an html table containing all the fields of the database table and (if openURL is TRUE) opens it in the web browser for viewing.

Returns htmlFile if the html file was written successfully.

### Note

If viewing a table containing sequences, the sequences are purposefully not shown in the output.

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### References

ES Wright (2016) "Using DECIPHER v2.0 to Analyze Big Biological Sequence Data in R". The R Journal, **8(1)**, 352-359.

### See Also

[BrowseSeqs](#)

### Examples

```
if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {  
  db <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.sqlite", package="DECIPHER")  
  BrowseDB(db)  
}
```

BrowseSeqs

*View Sequences in a Web Browser***Description**

Opens an html file in a web browser to show the sequences in an XStringSet.

**Usage**

```
BrowseSeqs(myXStringSet,
           htmlFile = tempfile(fileext=".html"),
           openURL = interactive(),
           colorPatterns = TRUE,
           highlight = NA,
           patterns = c("-", alphabet(myXStringSet, baseOnly=TRUE)),
           colors = substring(rainbow(length(patterns),
                                     v=0.8, start=0.9, end=0.7), 1, 7),
           colWidth = Inf,
           title = "",
           ...)
```

**Arguments**

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| myXStringSet  | A XStringSet object of sequences.  |
| htmlFile      | Character string giving the location where the html file should be written.  |
| openURL       | Logical indicating whether the htmlFile should be opened in a web browser.   |
| colorPatterns | Logical specifying whether to color matched patterns, or an integer vector providing pairs of start and stop boundaries for coloring.  |
| highlight     | Numeric specifying which sequence in the set to use for comparison or NA to color all sequences (default). If highlight is 0 then positions differing from the consensus sequence are highlighted.   |
| patterns      | Either an AAStringSet, DNAStrngSet, or RNAStrngSet object, a character vector containing regular expressions, a list of numeric matrices, or NULL. (See details section below.)  |
| colors        | Character vector providing the color for each of the matched patterns. Typically a character vector with elements of 7 characters: “#” followed by the red, blue, green values in hexadecimal (after rescaling to 0 ... 255). Ignored when patterns is a list of matrices. |
| colWidth      | Integer giving the maximum number of nucleotides wide the display can be before starting a new page. Must be a multiple of 20 (e.g., 100), or Inf (the default) to display all the sequences in one set of rows.   |
| title         | Character string denoting a title that should appear at the top of the output or "" (the default) for no title.  |
| ...           | Additional arguments to adjust the appearance of the consensus sequence at the base of the display. Passed directly to ConsensusSequence for an AAStringSet, DNAStrngSet, or RNAStrngSet, or to consensusString for a BStringSet.  |

## Details

BrowseSeqs converts an `XStringSet` into html format for viewing in a web browser. The sequences are colored in accordance with the patterns that are provided, or left uncolored if `colorPatterns` is `FALSE` or `patterns` is `NULL`. Character or `XStringSet` patterns are matched as regular expressions and colored according to colors. If `patterns` is a list of matrices, then it must contain one element per sequence. Each matrix is interpreted as providing the fraction red, blue, and green for each letter in the sequence. Thus, `colors` is ignored when `patterns` is a list. (See examples section below.)

Patterns are not matched across column breaks, so multi-character patterns should be carefully considered when `colWidth` is less than the maximum sequence length. Patterns are matched sequentially in the order provided, so it is feasible to use nested patterns such as `c("ACCTG", "CC")`. In this case the "CC" could be colored differently inside the previously colored "ACCTG". Note that patterns overlapping the boundaries of a previously matched pattern will not be matched. For example, "ACCTG" would not be matched if `patterns=c("CC", "ACCTG")`.

Some web browsers cannot quickly display a large amount colored text, so it is recommended to use `colorPatterns = FALSE` or to highlight a sequence when viewing a large `XStringSet`. Highlighting will only show all of the characters in the highlighted sequence, and convert all matching positions in the other sequences into dots without color. Also, note that some web browsers display small shifts between fixed-width characters that may become noticeable as color offsets between the ends of long sequences.

## Value

Creates an html file containing sequence data and (if `openURL` is `TRUE`) opens it in a web browser for viewing. The layout has the sequence name on the left, position legend on the top, cumulative number of nucleotides on the right, and consensus sequence on the bottom.

Returns `htmlFile` if the html file was written successfully.

## Note

Some web browsers do not display colored characters with equal widths. If positions do not align across sequences then try opening the `htmlFile` with a different web browser.

## Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

## References

ES Wright (2016) "Using DECIPHER v2.0 to Analyze Big Biological Sequence Data in R". *The R Journal*, **8(1)**, 352-359. Kunzmann P., et al. (2020) "Substitution matrix based color schemes for sequence alignment visualization". *BMC Bioinformatics*, **21(1):209**.

## See Also

[BrowseDB](#), [ConsensusSequence](#)

**Examples**

```

# load the example DNA sequences
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNAStringSet(fas) # non-coding ribosomal RNA gene sequences

# example of using the defaults with DNA sequences
BrowseSeqs(dna) # view the XStringSet

# color only "ACTG" and "CSC" patterns (where S is C or G)
BrowseSeqs(dna, patterns=DNAStrngSet(c("ACTG", "CSC")))

# highlight (i.e., only fully-color) the first sequence
BrowseSeqs(dna, highlight=1) # other sequences are dots where matching

# highlight the consensus sequence at the bottom
BrowseSeqs(dna, highlight=0) # other sequences are dots where matching

# split the wide view into multiple vertical pages (for printing)
BrowseSeqs(dna, colWidth=100, highlight=1)

# specify an alternative color scheme for -, A, C, G, T
BrowseSeqs(dna, colors=c("#1E90FF", "#32CD32", "#9400D3", "black", "#EE3300"))

# only color the positions within certain positional ranges (100-200 & 250-500)
BrowseSeqs(dna, colorPatterns=c(100, 200, 250, 500))

# example of calling attention to letters by coloring gaps black
BrowseSeqs(dna, patterns="-", colors="black")

# add a title to the top of the page
BrowseSeqs(dna, title="Title")

## Not run:
# color according to base-pairing by supplying the fraction RGB for every position
dbn <- PredictDBN(dna, type="structures") # calculate the secondary structures
# dbn now contains the scores for whether a base is paired (left/right) or unpaired
dbn[[1]][, 1] # the scores for the first position in the first sequence
dbn[[2]][, 10] # the scores for the tenth position in the second sequence
# these positional scores can be used as shades of red, green, and blue:
BrowseSeqs(dna, patterns=dbn) # red = unpaired, green = left-pairing, blue = right
# positions in black are not part of the consensus secondary structure

## End(Not run)

# color all restriction sites
data(RESTRICTION_ENZYMES) # load dataset containing restriction enzyme sequences
sites <- RESTRICTION_ENZYMES
sites <- gsub("[^A-Z]", "", sites) # remove non-letters
sites <- DNAStrngSet(sites) # convert the character vector to a DNAStrngSet
rc_sites <- reverseComplement(DNAStrngSet(sites))
w <- which(sites != rc_sites) # find non-palindromic restriction sites
sites <- c(sites, rc_sites[w]) # append their reverse complement

```

```

sites <- sites[order(nchar(sites))] # match shorter sites first
BrowseSeqs(dna, patterns=sites)

# color bases by quality score
fastq <- system.file("extdata", "s_1_sequence.txt", package="Biostrings")
reads <- readQualityScaledDNASTringSet(fastq, quality.scoring="solexa")
colors <- colorRampPalette(c("red", "yellow", "green"))(42)
colors <- col2rgb(colors)/255
quals <- as(quality(reads), "IntegerList")
quals <- lapply(quals, function(x) colors[, x])
BrowseSeqs(DNASTringSet(reads), patterns=quals) # green = high quality, red = low quality

# load the example protein coding sequences
fas <- system.file("extdata", "50S_ribosomal_protein_L2.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNASTringSet(fas)

# example of using the defaults with amino acid sequences
aa <- unique(translate(dna)) # the unique amino acid sequences
BrowseSeqs(aa)

# example of highlighting the consensus amino acid sequence
AA <- AlignSeqs(aa)
BrowseSeqs(AA, highlight=0)

# example of highlighting positions that differ from the majority consensus
BrowseSeqs(AA, highlight=0, threshold=0.5)

# specify an alternative color scheme for amino acids (from Kunzmann et al.)
colors <- c(`-`="#000000", `A`="#BDB1E8", `R`="#EFA2C5", `N`="#F6602F",
  `D`="#FD5559", `C`="#12C7FE", `Q`="#DDACB4", `E`="#FEA097", `G`="#F46802",
  `H`="#FCA708", `I`="#369BD9", `L`="#2E95EC", `K`="#CF7690", `M`="#4B8EFE",
  `F`="#76997D", `P`="#FD2AE3", `S`="#A08A9A", `T`="#9A84D5", `W`="#74C80D",
  `Y`="#9BB896", `V`="#89B9F9")
BrowseSeqs(AA, colors=colors, patterns=names(colors))

# example of coloring in a reduced amino acid alphabet
alpha <- AA_REDUCED[[15]]
alpha # clustering of amino acids based on similarity
BrowseSeqs(AA, patterns=c("-", paste("[", alpha, "]", sep="")))

# color amino acids according to their predicted secondary structure
hec <- PredictHEC(AA, type="probabilities") # calculate the secondary structures
# hec now contains the probability that a base is in an alpha-helix or beta-sheet
hec[[3]][, 18] # the 18th position in sequence 3 is likely part of a beta-sheet (E)
# the positional probabilities can be used as shades of red, green, and blue:
BrowseSeqs(AA, patterns=hec) # red = alpha-helix, green = beta-sheet, blue = coil

# color codons according to their corresponding amino acid
DNA <- AlignTranslation(dna) # align the translation then reverse translate
colors <- rainbow(21, v=0.8, start=0.9, end=0.7) # codon colors
m <- match(GENETIC_CODE, unique(GENETIC_CODE)) # corresponding amino acid
codonBounds <- matrix(c(seq(1, width(DNA)[1], 3), # start of codons
  seq(3, width(DNA)[1], 3)), # end of codons

```

```
nrow=2,
byrow=TRUE)
BrowseSeqs(DNA,
colorPatterns=codonBounds,
patterns=c("---", names(GENETIC_CODE)), # codons to color
colors=c("black", substring(colors[m], 1, 7)))
```

---

## CalculateEfficiencyArray

*Predict the Hybridization Efficiency of Probe/Target Sequence Pairs*

---

### Description

Calculates the Gibbs free energy and hybridization efficiency of probe/target pairs at varying concentrations of the denaturant formamide.

### Usage

```
CalculateEfficiencyArray(probe,
                        target,
                        FA = 0,
                        dGini = 1.96,
                        Po = 10^-2.0021,
                        m = 0.1731,
                        temp = 42,
                        deltaGrules = NULL)
```

### Arguments

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| probe       | A DNASTringSet object or character vector with pairwise-aligned probe sequences in 5' to 3' orientation.   |
| target      | A DNASTringSet object or character vector with pairwise-aligned target sequences in 5' to 3' orientation.  |
| FA          | A vector of one or more formamide concentrations (as percent v/v).   |
| dGini       | The initiation free energy. The default is 1.96 [kcal/mol].  |
| Po          | The effective probe concentration.   |
| m           | The m-value defining the linear relationship of denaturation in the presence of formamide.   |
| temp        | Equilibrium temperature in degrees Celsius.  |
| deltaGrules | Free energy rules for all possible base pairings in quadruplets. If NULL, defaults to the parameters obtained using NimbleGen microarrays and a Linear Free Energy Model developed by Yilmaz <i>et al.</i> |

## Details

This function calculates the free energy and hybridization efficiency (HE) for a given formamide concentration ([FA]) using the linear free energy model given by:

$$HE = Po * exp[-(dG_0 + m * FA)/RT]/(1 + Po * exp[-(dG_0 + m * FA)/RT])$$

The probe and target input sequences must be aligned in pairs, such that the first probe is aligned to the first target, second-to-second, and so on. Ambiguity codes in the IUPAC\_CODE\_MAP are accepted in probe and target sequences. Any ambiguities will default to perfect match pairings by inheriting the nucleotide in the same position on the opposite sequence whenever possible. If the ambiguity results in a mismatch then “T”, “G”, “C”, and “A” are substituted, in that order. For example, if a probe nucleotide is “S” (“C” or “G”) then it will be considered a “C” if the target nucleotide in the same position is a “C”, otherwise the ambiguity will be interpreted as a “G”.

If deltaGrules is NULL then the rules defined in data(deltaGrules) will be used. Note that deltaGrules of the same format may be customized for any application and specified as an input.

## Value

A matrix with the predicted Gibbs free energy (dG) and hybridization efficiency (HE) at each concentration of formamide ([FA]).

## Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

## References

Yilmaz LS, Loy A, Wright ES, Wagner M, Noguera DR (2012) Modeling Formamide Denaturation of Probe-Target Hybrids for Improved Microarray Probe Design in Microbial Diagnostics. PLoS ONE 7(8): e43862. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0043862.

## See Also

[deltaGrules](#)

## Examples

```
probes <- c("AAAAACGGGGAGCGGGGGATACTG", "AAAAACTCAACCCGAGGAGCGGGG")
targets <- c("CAACCCGGGGAGCGGGGGATACTG", "TCGGGCTCAACCCGAGGAGCGGGG")
result <- CalculateEfficiencyArray(probes, targets, FA=0:40)
dG0 <- result[, "dG_0"]
HE0 <- result[, "HybEff_0"]
plot(result[1, 1:40], xlab="[FA]", ylab="HE", main="Probe/Target # 1", type="l")
```

---

 CalculateEfficiencyFISH

*Predict Thermodynamic Parameters of Probe/Target Sequence Pairs*


---

### Description

Calculates the Gibbs free energy, formamide melt point, and hybridization efficiency of probe/target (DNA/RNA) pairs.

### Usage

```
CalculateEfficiencyFISH(probe,
                        target,
                        temp,
                        P,
                        ions,
                        FA,
                        batchSize = 1000)
```

### Arguments

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| probe     | A DNASTringSet object or character vector with unaligned probe sequences in 5' to 3' orientation.  |
| target    | A DNASTringSet object, RNASTringSet, or character vector with unaligned target or non-target sequences in 5' to 3' orientation. The DNA base Thymine will be treated the same as Uracil.   |
| temp      | Numeric specifying the hybridization temperature, typically 46 degrees Celsius.  |
| P         | Numeric giving the molar concentration of probes during hybridization.   |
| ions      | Numeric giving the molar sodium equivalent ionic concentration. Values may range between 0.01M and 1M. Note that salt correction is not available for thermodynamic rules of RNA/RNA interactions, which were determined at 1 molar concentration. |
| FA        | Numeric concentration (as percent v/v) of the denaturant formamide in the hybridization buffer.  |
| batchSize | Integer specifying the number of probes to simulate hybridization per batch. See the Description section below.  |

### Details

Hybridization of pairwise probe/target (DNA/RNA) pairs is simulated *in silico*. Gibbs free energies are obtained from system calls to OligoArrayAux, which must be properly installed (see the Notes section below). Probe/target pairs are sent to OligoArrayAux in batches of batchSize, which prevents systems calls from being too many characters. Note that OligoArrayAux does not support degeneracy codes (non-base letters), although they are accepted without error. Any sequences with ambiguity should be expanded into multiple permutations with [Disambiguate](#) before input.



**Value**

A matrix of predicted hybridization efficiency (HybEff), formamide melt point (FAM), and free energy (ddG1 and dG1) for each probe/target pair of sequences.

**Note**

The program OligoArrayAux (<http://www.unafold.org/Dinamelt/software/oligoarrayaux.php>) must be installed in a location accessible by the system. For example, the following code should print the installed OligoArrayAux version when executed from the R console:

```
system("hybrid-min -V")
```

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**References**

ES Wright et al. (2014) "Automated Design of Probes for rRNA-Targeted Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization Reveals the Advantages of Using Dual Probes for Accurate Identification." Applied and Environmental Microbiology, doi:10.1128/AEM.01685-14.

**See Also**

[DesignProbes](#), [TileSeqs](#)

**Examples**

```
probe <- c("GGGCTTTCACATCAGACTTAAGAAACC", "CCCCACGCTTTCGCGCC")
target <- reverseComplement(DNAStringSet(probe))
# not run (must have OligoArrayAux installed first):
## Not run: CalculateEfficiencyFISH(probe, target, temp=46, P=250e-9, ions=1, FA=35)
```

---

CalculateEfficiencyPCR

*Predict Amplification Efficiency of Primer Sequences*

---

**Description**

Calculates the amplification efficiency of primers from their hybridization efficiency and elongation efficiency at the target site.

**Usage**

```
CalculateEfficiencyPCR(primer,
                      target,
                      temp,
                      P,
                      ions,
                      batchSize = 1000,
                      taqEfficiency = TRUE,
                      maxDistance = 0.4,
                      maxGaps = 2,
                      processors = 1)
```

**Arguments**

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| primer        | A DNASTringSet object or character vector with unaligned primer sequences in 5' to 3' orientation.  |
| target        | A DNASTringSet object or character vector with unaligned target or non-target sequences in 5' to 3' orientation.  |
| temp          | Numeric specifying the annealing temperature used in the PCR reaction.  |
| P             | Numeric giving the molar concentration of primers in the reaction.  |
| ions          | Numeric giving the molar sodium equivalent ionic concentration. Values may range between 0.01M and 1M.  |
| batchSize     | Integer specifying the number of primers to simulate hybridization per batch. See the Description section below.  |
| taqEfficiency | Logical determining whether to make use of elongation efficiency and maxDistance to increase predictive accuracy for <i>Taq</i> DNA Polymerase amplifying primers with mismatches near the 3' terminus. Note that this should be set to FALSE if using a high-fidelity polymerase with 3' to 5' exonuclease activity. |
| maxDistance   | Numeric specifying the maximal fraction of mismatched base pairings on a rolling basis beginning from the 3' end of the primer. Only used if taqEfficiency is TRUE.   |
| maxGaps       | Integer specifying the maximum number of insertions or deletions (indels) in the primer/target alignment. Only used if taqEfficiency is TRUE.   |
| processors    | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |

**Details**

Amplification of pairwise primer/target pairs is simulated *in silico*. A complex model of hybridization is employed that takes into account the side reactions resulting from probe-folding, target-folding, and primer-dimer formation. The resulting hybridization efficiency is multiplied by the elongation efficiency to predict the overall efficiency of amplification.

Free energy is obtained from system calls to OligoArrayAux, which must be properly installed (see the Notes section below). Primer/target pairs are sent to OligoArrayAux in batches of batchSize, which prevents systems calls from being too many characters. Note that OligoArrayAux does not

support degeneracy codes (non-base letters), although they are accepted without error. Any sequences with ambiguity should be expanded into multiple permutations with [Disambiguate](#) before input.

**Value**

A vector of predicted efficiencies for amplifying each primer/target pair of sequences.

**Note**

The program OligoArrayAux (<http://www.unafold.org/Dinamelt/software/oligoarrayaux.php>) must be installed in a location accessible by the system. For example, the following code should print the installed OligoArrayAux version when executed from the R console:

```
system("hybrid-min -V")
```

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <[eswright@pitt.edu](mailto:eswright@pitt.edu)>

**References**

ES Wright et al. (2013) "Exploiting Extension Bias in PCR to Improve Primer Specificity in Ensembles of Nearly Identical DNA Templates." *Environmental Microbiology*, doi:10.1111/1462-2920.12259.

**See Also**

[AmplifyDNA](#), [DesignPrimers](#), [DesignSignatures](#)

**Examples**

```
primers <- c("AAAACGGGGAGCGGGGG", "AAAACTCAACCCGAGGAGCGCGT")
targets <- reverseComplement(DNAStringSet(primers))
# not run (must have OligoArrayAux installed first):
## Not run: CalculateEfficiencyPCR(primers, targets, temp=75, P=4e-7, ions=0.225)
```

---

Clusterize

*Cluster Sequences By Distance*

---

**Description**

Groups the sequences into approximate clusters of similarity.

**Usage**

```
Clusterize(myXStringSet,
           cutoff = 0,
           method = "overlap",
           includeTerminalGaps = FALSE,
           penalizeGapLetterMatches = NA,
           minCoverage = 0.5,
           maxPhase1 = 2e4,
           maxPhase2 = 2e3,
           maxPhase3 = 2e3,
           maxAlignments = 200,
           rareKmers = 50,
           probability = 0.99,
           invertCenters = FALSE,
           singleLinkage = FALSE,
           maskRepeats = FALSE,
           maskLCRs = FALSE,
           alphabet = AA_REDUCED[[186]],
           processors = 1,
           verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <code>myXStringSet</code>             | The (unaligned) <code>DNAStringSet</code> , <code>RNAStringSet</code> , or <code>AAStringSet</code> to cluster.  |
| <code>cutoff</code>                   | A vector of maximum distances (approximately) separating sequences in the same cluster (i.e., 1 - similarities). Multiple cutoffs may be provided in ascending or descending order. (See details section below.)   |
| <code>method</code>                   | Character string determining the region in which distance is calculated. This should be (an unambiguous abbreviation of) one of "overlap", "shortest", or "longest". The default method ("overlap") calculates distance from the overlapping region between terminal gaps when <code>includeTerminalGaps</code> is <code>FALSE</code> and the entire alignment otherwise. Setting <code>method</code> to "shortest" or "longest" will use the region between the start and end of the shortest or longest sequence, respectively, for each pairwise distance. The method is only applicable when <code>includeTerminalGaps</code> is <code>TRUE</code> . |
| <code>includeTerminalGaps</code>      | Logical specifying whether or not to include terminal gaps ("-") characters) in the pairwise alignments into the calculation of distance.  |
| <code>penalizeGapLetterMatches</code> | Logical specifying whether or not to consider gap-to-letter matches as mismatches. If <code>FALSE</code> , then gap-to-letter matches are not included in the total length used to calculate distance, and if <code>TRUE</code> all gaps-to-letter pairs are considered mismatches. The default ( <code>NA</code> ) is to penalize gap-to-letter mismatches once per insertion or deletion, which treats runs of gaps (i.e., indels) as equivalent to a single mismatch.   |
| <code>minCoverage</code>              | Numeric giving the minimum fraction of sequence positions that must be overlapping for a sequence to be clustered with the cluster representative. If positive   |

then coverage is calculated relative to the sequence being clustered (i.e., the shorter sequence). If negative then coverage is computed relative to the cluster representative (i.e., the longest sequence in the cluster).

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| maxPhase1     | An integer specifying the maximum number of related sequences to consider in the initial partitioning of the sequences.   |
| maxPhase2     | An integer giving the maximum number of replicates to perform when sorting sequences based on their k-mer similarity.   |
| maxPhase3     | An integer determining the number of comparisons per sequence to perform when attempting to find cluster centers.   |
| maxAlignments | An integer designating the maximum number of alignments to perform when attempting to assign a sequence to an existing cluster.   |
| rareKmers     | An integer setting the number of rare k-mers to record per sequence. Larger values require more memory but may improve accuracy with diminishing returns.   |
| probability   | Numeric between 0 and 1 (exclusive) defining the approximate probability of clustering sequences that are exactly cutoff distant. Typically near, but always less than, 1. Lower values result in faster clustering at the expense of effectiveness.                      |
| invertCenters | Logical controlling whether the cluster center is inverted (i.e., multiplied by -1), which allows the centers to be determined from the results. The default (FALSE) only returns positive cluster numbers. If TRUE, the center sequence(s) of each cluster are negative. |
| singleLinkage | Logical specifying whether to perform single-linkage clustering. The default (FALSE) only establishes linkage to the cluster center. Single-linkage clustering creates broader clusters that may better correspond to natural groups depending on the application.        |
| maskRepeats   | Logical specifying whether to mask repeats when clustering.   |
| maskLCRs      | Logical indicating whether to mask low complexity regions when clustering.  |
| alphabet      | Character vector of amino acid groupings used to reduce the 20 standard amino acids into smaller groups. Alphabet reduction helps to find more distant homologies between sequences.  |
| processors    | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |
| verbose       | Logical indicating whether to display progress.   |

## Details

Clusterize groups the input sequences into approximate clusters using a heuristic algorithm with linear time and memory complexity. In phase 1, the sequences are partitioned into groups of similarity. In phase 2, the sequences are ordered by k-mer similarity by relatedness sorting. In phase 3, the sequences are iteratively clustered in this order by their similarity to surrounding sequences in the sorting. That is, the first sequence becomes the representative of cluster #1. If the second sequence is within cutoff distance then it is added to the cluster, otherwise it becomes a new cluster representative. The remaining sequences are matched to cluster representatives in a similar fashion until all sequences belong to a cluster. In the majority of cases, this process results in clusters with

members separated by less than cutoff distance, and all cluster members must be within cutoff distance of their cluster representative.

The calculation of distance can be controlled in multiple ways, with each parameterization of distance having advantages and disadvantages. By default, distance is the fraction of positions that are different, including gaps, within the overlapping region in a pairwise alignment. The defaults will handle partial-length sequences well, but also cluster sequences with high similarity between their opposite ends. For this reason, it is important to set `minimumCoverage` such that distances are based off of considerable overlap between sequences in the pairwise alignment. The default (0.5) requires sequences to share at least 50% of their positions with the cluster representative. This distance parameterization works well, but there are reasonable alternatives.

If `penalizeGapLetterMatches` is `FALSE`, the distance will exclude gap regions. If `includeTerminalGaps` is `TRUE`, the calculation of distance will use the entire (global) alignment. If `method` is "shortest" and `includeTerminalGaps` is set to `TRUE`, then the distance is calculated for the region encompassed by the shorter sequence in each pair, which is the common definition of distance used by other clustering programs. This common definition of distance will sometimes separate partly overlapping sequences, which is why it is not the default. Another option is to set `minCoverage` to a negative fraction. This requires sequences to have substantial overlap with the cluster representative, which is the longest sequence in the cluster. For example, setting `minCoverage` to `-0.5` would require every clustered sequence to share at least 50% of positions with the cluster representative.

The algorithm requires time proportional to the number of input sequences in `myXStringSet`. The phase 1, up to `maxPhase1` sequences sharing a `k`-mer are tabulated while partitioning each sequence. In phase 2, the sequences are compared with up to `maxPhase2` passes that each take linear time. Ordering of the sequences is performed in linear time using radix sorting. In phase 3, each sequence is compared with up to `maxPhase3` previous cluster representatives of sequences sharing rare `k`mers or nearby sequences in the relatedness ordering. This is possible because the sequences are sorted by relatedness, such that more recent cluster representatives are more similar. Hence, the complete algorithm scales in linear time asymptotically and returns clusters of sequences within cutoff distance of their center sequence.

Multiple cutoffs can be provided in sorted order, which saves time because phases 1 and 2 only need to be performed once. If the cutoffs are provided in *descending* order then clustering at each new value of cutoff is continued within the prior cutoff's clusters. In this way clusters at lower values of cutoff are completely contained within their "umbrella" clusters at higher values of cutoff. This slightly accelerates the clustering process, because each subsequent group is only clustered within the previous group. If multiple cutoffs are provided in *ascending* order then clustering at each level of cutoff is independent of the prior level.

Note, the clustering algorithm is stochastic. Hence, clusters can vary from run-to-run unless the random number seed is set for repeatability (i.e., with `set.seed`). Also, `invertCenters` can be used to determine the center sequence of each cluster from the output. Since identical sequences will always be assigned the same cluster numbers, it is possible for more than one input sequence in `myXStringSet` to be assigned as the center of a cluster if they are identical.

## Value

A `data.frame` is returned with dimensions  $N * M$ , where each one of  $N$  sequences is assigned to a cluster at the  $M$ -level of cutoff. The `row.names` of the `data.frame` correspond to the *names* of `myXStringSet`.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**References**

Wright, E. S. (2024). Accurately clustering biological sequences in linear time by relatedness sorting. *Nature Communications*, 15, 1-13. <http://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-024-47371-9>

**See Also**

[AA\\_REDUCED](#), [DistanceMatrix](#), [Treeline](#)

**Examples**

```
fas <- system.file("extdata", "50S_ribosomal_protein_L2.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNAStringSet(fas)
aa <- translate(dna)

# typical usage (e.g., clustering at >= 90 percent similarity)
clusters <- Clusterize(aa, cutoff=0.1) # set processors = NULL for max speed
head(clusters)

# typical usage (e.g., obtaining cluster representatives)
clusters <- Clusterize(aa, cutoff=0.1, invertCenters=TRUE)
aa[clusters[[1]] < 0]

# cluster each cutoff within the previous cluster (nested groups)
clusters <- Clusterize(aa, cutoff=seq(0.7, 0, -0.1))
head(clusters)
apply(clusters, 2, max) # number of clusters per cutoff

# cluster each cutoff independently (possibly fewer clusters per cutoff)
clusters <- Clusterize(aa, cutoff=seq(0, 0.7, 0.1))
head(clusters)
apply(clusters, 2, max) # number of clusters per cutoff

# make cluster center(s) negative for tracking
clusters <- Clusterize(aa, cutoff=0.5, invertCenters=TRUE)
head(clusters)
clusters[clusters$cluster < 0, , drop=FALSE]
unique(aa[clusters$cluster < 0]) # unique cluster centers
apply(clusters, 2, function(x) max(abs(x))) # number of clusters

# cluster nucleotide sequences
clusters <- Clusterize(dna, cutoff=0.2, invertCenters=TRUE)
head(clusters)
apply(clusters, 2, function(x) max(abs(x))) # number of clusters
```

Codec

*Compression/Decompression of Character Vectors***Description**

Compresses character vectors into raw vectors, or decompresses raw vectors into character vectors using a variety of codecs.

**Usage**

```
Codec(x,
      compression,
      compressRepeats = FALSE,
      processors = 1)
```

**Arguments**

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| x               | Either a character vector to be compressed, or a list of raw vectors to be decompressed.  |
| compression     | The type of compression algorithm to use when x is a character vector. This should be (an unambiguous abbreviation of) one of "nbit" (for nucleotides), "qbit" (for quality scores), "gzip", "bzip2", or "xz". If compression is "nbit" or "qbit" then a second method can be provided for cases when x is incompressible. Decompression type is determined automatically. (See details section below.) |
| compressRepeats | Logical specifying whether to compress exact repeats and reverse complement repeats in a character vector input (x). Only applicable when compression is "nbit". Repeat compression in long DNA sequences generally increases compression by about 2% while requiring three-fold more compression time.   |
| processors      | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |

**Details**

Codec can be used to compress/decompress character vectors using different algorithms. The "nbit" and "qbit" methods are tailored specifically to nucleotides and quality scores, respectively. These two methods will store the data as plain text ("ASCII" format) when it is incompressible. In such cases, a second compression method can be given to use in lieu of plain text. For example `compression = c("nbit", "gzip")` will use "gzip" compression when "nbit" compression is inappropriate.

When performing the reverse operation, decompression, the type of compression is automatically detected based on the unique signature ("magic number") added by each compression algorithm.



**Value**

If `x` is a character vector to be compressed, the output is a list with one element containing a raw vector per character string. If `x` is a list of raw vectors to be decompressed, then the output is a character vector with one string per list element.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**Examples**

```
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- as.character(readDNAStrngSet(fas)) # aligned sequences
object.size(dna)

# compression
system.time(x <- Codec(dna, compression="nbit"))
object.size(x)/sum(nchar(dna)) # bytes per position

system.time(g <- Codec(dna, compression="gzip"))
object.size(g)/sum(nchar(dna)) # bytes per position

# decompression
system.time(y <- Codec(x))
stopifnot(dna==y)

system.time(z <- Codec(g))
stopifnot(dna==z)
```

---

ConsensusSequence      *Create a Consensus Sequence*

---

**Description**

Forms a consensus sequence representing a set of sequences.

**Usage**

```
ConsensusSequence(myXStringSet,
                  threshold = 0.05,
                  ambiguity = TRUE,
                  noConsensusChar = "+",
                  minInformation = 1 - threshold,
                  includeNonLetters = FALSE,
                  includeTerminalGaps = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

|                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code>myXStringSet</code>        | An AStringSet, DNAStrngSet, or RNAStrngSet object of aligned sequences.   |
| <code>threshold</code>           | Numeric specifying that less than <code>threshold</code> fraction of sequence information can be lost at any position of the consensus sequence.      |
| <code>ambiguity</code>           | Logical specifying whether to consider ambiguity as split between their respective nucleotides. Degeneracy codes are specified in the IUPAC_CODE_MAP. |
| <code>noConsensusChar</code>     | Single character from the sequence's alphabet giving the base to use when there is no consensus in a position.  |
| <code>minInformation</code>      | Minimum fraction of information required to form consensus in each position.  |
| <code>includeNonLetters</code>   | Logical specifying whether to count gap ("-"), mask ("+"), and unknown (".") characters towards the consensus.  |
| <code>includeTerminalGaps</code> | Logical specifying whether or not to include terminal gaps ("- or ." characters on each end of the sequence) into the formation of consensus.         |

**Details**

ConsensusSequence removes the least frequent characters at each position, so long as they represent less than `threshold` fraction of the sequences in total. If necessary, ConsensusSequence represents the remaining characters using a degeneracy code from the IUPAC\_CODE\_MAP. Degeneracy codes are always used in cases where multiple characters are equally abundant.

Two key parameters control the degree of consensus: `threshold` and `minInformation`. The default `threshold` (0.05) means that at less than 5% of sequences will not be represented by the consensus sequence at any given position. The default `minInformation` (1 - 0.05) specifies that at least 95% of sequences must contain the information in the consensus, otherwise the `noConsensusChar` is used. This enables an alternative character (e.g., "+") to be substituted at positions that would otherwise yield an ambiguity code.

If `ambiguity` = TRUE (the default) then degeneracy codes in `myXStringSet` are split between their respective bases according to the IUPAC\_CODE\_MAP for DNA/RNA and AMINO\_ACID\_CODE for AA. For example, an "R" in a DNAStrngSet would count as half an "A" and half a "G". If `ambiguity` = FALSE then degeneracy codes are not considered in forming the consensus. For an AStringSet input, the lack of degeneracy codes generally results in "X" at positions with mismatches, unless the `threshold` is set to a higher value than the default.

If `includeNonLetters` = TRUE (the default) then gap ("-"), mask ("+"), and unknown (".") characters are counted towards the consensus, otherwise they are omitted from calculation of the consensus. Note that gap ("-") and unknown (".") characters are treated interchangeably as gaps when forming the consensus sequence. For this reason, the consensus of a position with all unknown (".") characters will be a gap ("-"). Also, note that if consensus is formed between different length sequences then it will represent only the longest sequences at the end. For this reason the consensus sequence is generally based on a sequence alignment such that all of the sequences have equal lengths.

**Value**

An XStringSet with a single consensus sequence matching the input type.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**See Also**

[Disambiguate](#), [IdConsensus](#)

**Examples**

```
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNASTringSet(fas, n=10) # limit 10 sequences for visability
BrowseSeqs(dna) # consensus at bottom
BrowseSeqs(dna, threshold=0.5) # consensus at bottom

# controlling the degree of consensus
AAAT <- DNASTringSet(c("A", "A", "A", "T"))
ConsensusSequence(AAAT) # "W"
ConsensusSequence(AAAT, threshold=0.3) # "A"
ConsensusSequence(AAAT, threshold=0.3, minInformation=0.8) # "+"
ConsensusSequence(AAAT, threshold=0.3, minInformation=0.8, noConsensusChar="N") # "N"

# switch between degenerate-based and majority-based consensus
majority <- DNASTringSet(c("GTT", "GAA", "CTG"))
ConsensusSequence(majority) # degenerate-based
ConsensusSequence(majority, threshold=0.5) # majority-based
ConsensusSequence(majority, threshold=0.5, minInformation=0.75)

# behavior in the case of a tie
ConsensusSequence(DNASTringSet(c("A", "T"))) # "W"
ConsensusSequence(DNASTringSet(c("A", "T")), threshold=0.5) # "W"
ConsensusSequence(AAStringSet(c("A", "T"))) # "X"
ConsensusSequence(AAStringSet(c("A", "T")), threshold=0.5) # "X"
ConsensusSequence(AAStringSet(c("I", "L"))) # "J"
ConsensusSequence(AAStringSet(c("I", "L")), threshold=0.5) # "J"

# handling terminal gaps
dna <- DNASTringSet(c("ANGCT-", "-ACCT-"))
ConsensusSequence(dna) # "ANSCT-"
ConsensusSequence(dna, includeTerminalGaps=TRUE) # "+NSCT-"

# the "." character is treated is a "-"
aa <- AAStringSet(c("ANQIH-", "ADELW."))
ConsensusSequence(aa) # "ABZJX-"

# internal non-bases are included by default
ConsensusSequence(DNASTringSet(c("A+.A", "AAAAA")), noConsensusChar="N") # "ANNNA"
ConsensusSequence(DNASTringSet(c("A+.A", "AAAAA")), includeNonLetters=TRUE) # "AAAAA"

# degeneracy codes in the input are considered by default
ConsensusSequence(DNASTringSet(c("AWNDA", "AAAAA"))) # "AWNDA"
ConsensusSequence(DNASTringSet(c("AWNDA", "AAAAA")), ambiguity=FALSE) # "AAAAA"
```

---

**Cophenetic***Compute cophenetic distances on dendrogram objects*

---

**Description**

Calculates the matrix of cophenetic distances represented by a dendrogram object.

**Usage**

```
Cophenetic(x)
```

**Arguments**

x                    A dendrogram object.

**Details**

The cophenetic distance between two observations is defined here as the branch length separating them on a dendrogram, also known as the patristic distance. This function differs from the `cophenetic` function in that it does not assume the tree is ultrametric and outputs the branch length separating pairs of observations rather than the height of their merger. A dendrogram that better preserves a distance matrix will show higher correlation between the distance matrix and its cophenetic distances.

**Value**

An object of class 'dist'.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**See Also**

[Treeline](#)

**Examples**

```
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNASTringSet(fas)
d1 <- DistanceMatrix(dna, type="dist")
dend <- Treeline(myDistMatrix=d1)
d2 <- Cophenetic(dend)
cor(d1, d2)
```

---

CorrectFrameshifts      *Corrects Frameshift Errors In Protein Coding Sequences*

---

### Description

Corrects the reading frame to mitigate the impact of frameshift errors caused by insertions or deletions in unaligned nucleotide sequences.

### Usage

```
CorrectFrameshifts(myXStringSet,
                  myAAStringSet,
                  type = "indels",
                  acceptDistance = 0.01,
                  rejectDistance = 0.60,
                  maxComparisons = 10,
                  gapOpening = -13,
                  gapExtension = -1,
                  frameShift = -15,
                  geneticCode = GENETIC_CODE,
                  substitutionMatrix = "PFASUM50",
                  verbose = TRUE,
                  processors = 1)
```

### Arguments

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| myXStringSet   | A DNASTringSet or RNASTringSet of unaligned protein coding sequences in 5' to 3' orientation.   |
| myAAStringSet  | An AAStringSet of reference protein sequences. Ideally this would consist of a small set of diverse amino acid sequences belonging to the same group of protein coding sequences as myXStringSet.   |
| type           | Character string indicating the type of result desired. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "indels", "sequences", or "both". (See details section below.)   |
| acceptDistance | Numeric giving the maximum distance from a reference sequence that is acceptable to skip any remaining comparisons.   |
| rejectDistance | Numeric giving the maximum distance from a reference sequence that is allowed when correcting frameshifts. Sequences in myXStringSet that are greater than rejectDistance from the nearest reference sequence will only have their length trimmed from the 3'-end to a multiple of three nucleotides without any frameshift correction. |
| maxComparisons | The number of reference comparisons to make before stopping the search for a closer reference sequence.   |
| gapOpening     | Numeric giving the cost for opening a gap between the query and reference sequences.  |

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| gapExtension       | Numeric giving the cost for extending an open gap between the query and reference sequences.  |
| frameShift         | Numeric giving the cost for shifting between frames of the query sequence.  |
| geneticCode        | Named character vector in the same format as GENETIC_CODE (the default), which represents the standard genetic code.  |
| substitutionMatrix | Either a substitution matrix representing the substitution scores for an alignment (in third-bits) or the name of the amino acid substitution matrix to use in alignment. |
| verbose            | Logical indicating whether to display progress.   |
| processors         | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |

## Details

Accurate translation of protein coding sequences can be greatly disrupted by one or two nucleotide phase shifts that occasionally occur during DNA sequencing. These frameshift errors can potentially be corrected through comparison with other unshifted protein sequences. This function uses a set of reference amino acid sequences (`AAStringSet`) to find and correct frameshift errors in a set of nucleotide sequences (`myXStringSet`). First, three frame translation of the nucleotide sequences is performed, and the nearest reference sequence is selected. Then the optimal reading frame at each position is determined based on a variation of the Guan & Uberbacher (1996) method. Putative insertions and/or deletions (indels) are returned in the result, typically with close proximity to the true indel locations. For a comparison of this method to others, see Wang et al. (2013).

If `type` is "sequences" or "both", then frameshifts are corrected by adding N's and/or removing nucleotides. Note that this changes the nucleotide sequence, and the new sequence often has minor errors because the exact location of the indel(s) cannot be determined. However, the original frameshifts that disrupted the entire downstream sequence are reduced to local perturbations. All of the returned nucleotide sequences will have a reading frame starting from the first position. This allows direct translation, and in practice works well if there is a similar reference `myAAStringSet` with the correct reading frame. Hence it is more important that `myAAStringSet` contain a wide variety of sequences than it is that it contain a lot of sequences.

Multiple inputs control the time required for frameshift correction. The number of sequences in the reference set (`myAAStringSet`) will affect the speed of the first search for similar sequences. Assessing frameshifts in the second step requires order  $N \times M$  time, where  $N$  and  $M$  are the lengths of the query (`myXStringSet`) and reference sequences. Two parameters control the number of assessments that are made for each sequence: (1) `maxComparisons` determines the maximum number of reference sequences to compare to each query sequence, and (2) `acceptDist` defines the maximum distance between a query and reference that is acceptable before continuing to the next query sequence. A lower value for `maxComparisons` or a higher value for `acceptDist` will accelerate frameshift correction, potentially at the expense of some accuracy.

## Value

If `type` is "indels" then the returned object is a list with the same length as `myXStringSet`. Each element is a list with four components:

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| "insertions" | Approximate positions of inserted nucleotides, which could be removed to correct the reading frame, or excess nucleotides at the 3'-end that make the length longer than a multiple of three. |
| "deletions"  | Approximate positions of deleted nucleotides, which could be added back to correct the reading frame.   |
| "distance"   | The amino acid distance from the nearest reference sequence, between 0 and 1.   |
| "index"      | The integer index of the reference sequence that was used for frame correction, or 0 if no reference sequence was within rejectDistance.  |

Note that positions in insertions and deletions are sometimes repeated to indicate that the same position needs to be shifted successively more than once to correct the reading frame.

If type is "sequences" then the returned object is an XStringSet of the same type as the input (myXStringSet). Nucleotides are added or deleted as necessary to correct for frameshifts. The returned sequences all have a reading frame starting from position 1, so that they can be translated directly.

If type is "both" then the returned object is a list with two components: one for the "indels" and the other for the "sequences".

#### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

#### References

Guan, X., & Uberbacher, E. C. (1996). Alignments of DNA and protein sequences containing frameshift errors. *Computer Applications in the Biosciences : CABIOS*, **12(1)**, 31-40.

Wang, Q., et al. (2013). Ecological Patterns of nifH Genes in Four Terrestrial Climatic Zones Explored with Targeted Metagenomics Using FrameBot, a New Informatics Tool. *mBio*, **4(5)**, e00592-13-e00592-13.

#### See Also

[AlignTranslation](#), [OrientNucleotides](#), [PFASUM](#)

#### Examples

```
fas <- system.file("extdata", "50S_ribosomal_protein_L2.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNAStringSet(fas)

# introduce artificial indels
n_ins <- 2 # insertions per sequence
shifted <- replaceAt(dna,
  lapply(width(dna),
    sample,
    n_ins),
  sample(DNA_BASES,
    n_ins,
    replace=TRUE))
n_dels <- 1 # deletions per sequence
```

```

shifted <- replaceAt(shifted,
  as(lapply(width(shifted),
    function(x) {
      IRanges(sample(x,
        n_dels),
        width=1)
    })), "IRangesList"))

# to make frameshift correction more challenging,
# only supply 20 reference amino acid sequences
s <- sample(length(dna), 20)
x <- CorrectFrameshifts(shifted,
  translate(dna[s]),
  type="both")

# there was a wide range of distances
# to the nearest reference sequence
quantile(unlist(lapply(x[[1]], `[\`, "distance")))

# none of the sequences were > rejectDistance
# from the nearest reference sequence
length(which(unlist(lapply(x[[1]], `[\`, "index"))==0))

# the number of indels was generally correct
table(unlist(lapply(x[[1]], function(x) {
  length(x$insertions)})))/length(shifted)
table(unlist(lapply(x[[1]], function(x) {
  length(x$deletions)})))/length(shifted)

# align and display the translations
AA <- AlignTranslation(x$sequences,
  readingFrame=1,
  type="AAStringSet")
BrowseSeqs(AA)

```

---

CreateChimeras

*Create Artificial Chimeras*

---

## Description

Creates artificial random chimeras from a set of sequences.

## Usage

```

CreateChimeras(myDNAStringSet,
  numChimeras = 10,
  numParts = 2,
  minLength = 80,
  maxLength = Inf,
  minChimericRegionLength = 30,

```



```
randomLengths = TRUE,  
includeParents = TRUE,  
processors = 1,  
verbose = TRUE)
```

### Arguments

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| myDNAStrngSet           | A DNAStrngSet object with aligned sequences.   |
| numChimeras             | Number of chimeras desired.  |
| numParts                | Number of chimeric parts from which to form a single chimeric sequence.                            |
| minLength               | Minimum length of the complete chimeric sequence.  |
| maxLength               | Maximum length of the complete chimeric sequence.  |
| minChimericRegionLength | Minimum length of the chimeric region of each sequence part.                                       |
| randomLengths           | Logical specifying whether to create random length chimeras in addition to random breakpoints.     |
| includeParents          | Whether to include the parents of each chimera in the output.                                      |
| processors              | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors. |
| verbose                 | Logical indicating whether to display progress.  |

### Details

Forms a set of random chimeras from the input set of (typically good quality) sequences. The chimeras are created by merging random sequences at random breakpoints. These chimeras can be used for testing the accuracy of the [FindChimeras](#) or other chimera finding functions.

### Value

A DNAStrngSet object containing chimeras. The names of the chimeras are specified as "parent #1 name [chimeric region] (distance from parent to chimera), ...".

If includeParents = TRUE then the parents of the chimeras are included at the end of the result. The parents are trimmed to the same length as the chimera if randomLengths = TRUE. The names of the parents are specified as "parent #1 name [region] (distance to parent #2, ...)".

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### See Also

[FindChimeras](#), [Seqs2DB](#)

**Examples**

```
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNAStringSet(fas)
chims <- CreateChimeras(dna)
BrowseSeqs(chims)
```

DB2Seqs

*Export Database Sequences to a FASTA or FASTQ File***Description**

Exports a database containing sequences to a FASTA or FASTQ formatted file of sequence records.

**Usage**

```
DB2Seqs(file,
        dbFile,
        tblName = "Seqs",
        identifier = "",
        type = "BStringSet",
        limit = -1,
        replaceChar = NA,
        nameBy = "description",
        orderBy = "row_names",
        removeGaps = "none",
        append = FALSE,
        width = 80,
        compress = FALSE,
        chunkSize = 1e5,
        sep = ":",
        clause = "",
        processors = 1,
        verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>file</code>       | Character string giving the location where the file should be written.   |
| <code>dbFile</code>     | A database connection object or a character string specifying the path to a SQLite database file.  |
| <code>tblName</code>    | Character string specifying the table in which to extract the data.  |
| <code>identifier</code> | Optional character string used to narrow the search results to those matching a specific identifier. If "" then all identifiers are selected.  |
| <code>type</code>       | The type of XStringSet (sequences) to export to a FASTA formatted file or QualityScaledXStringSet to export to a FASTQ formatted file. This should be (an unambiguous abbreviation of) one of "DNAStringSet", "RNAStringSet", "AAStringSet", "BStringSet", "QualityScaledDNAStringSet", "QualityScaledRNAStringSet", |

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
|             | "QualityScaledAStringSet", or "QualityScaledBStringSet". (See details section below.)  |
| limit       | Number of results to display. The default (-1) does not limit the number of results.   |
| replaceChar | Optional character used to replace any characters of the sequence that are not present in the XStringSet's alphabet. Not applicable if type=="BStringSet". The default (NA) results in an error if an incompatible character exist. (See details section below.) |
| nameBy      | Character string giving the column name(s) for identifying each sequence record. If more than one column name is provided, the information in each column is concatenated, separated by sep, in the order specified.   |
| orderBy     | Character string giving the column name for sorting the results. Defaults to the order of entries in the database. Optionally can be followed by "ASC" or "DESC" to specify ascending (the default) or descending order.   |
| removeGaps  | Determines how gaps ("- " or ". " characters) are removed in the sequences. This should be (an unambiguous abbreviation of) one of "none", "all" or "common".  |
| append      | Logical indicating whether to append the output to the existing file.  |
| width       | Integer specifying the maximum number of characters per line of sequence. Not applicable when exporting to a FASTQ formatted file.   |
| compress    | Logical specifying whether to compress the output file using gzip compression.   |
| chunkSize   | Number of sequences to write to the file at a time. Cannot be less than the total number of sequences if removeGaps is "common".   |
| sep         | Character string providing the separator between fields in each sequence's name, by default pairs of colons ("::").  |
| clause      | An optional character string to append to the query as part of a "where clause".   |
| processors  | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.   |
| verbose     | Logical indicating whether to display status.  |

### Details

Sequences are exported into either a FASTA or FASTQ file as determined by the type of sequences. If type is an XStringSet then sequences are exported to FASTA format. Quality information for QualityScaledXStringSets are interpreted as PredQuality scores before export to FASTQ format.

If type is "BStringSet" (the default) then sequences are exported to a FASTA file exactly the same as they were when imported. If type is "DNAStrngSet" then all U's are converted to T's before export, and vice-versa if type is "RNAStrngSet". All remaining characters not in the XStringSet's alphabet are converted to replaceChar or removed if replaceChar is "". Note that if replaceChar is NA (the default), it will result in an error when an unexpected character is found.

### Value

Writes a FASTA or FASTQ formatted file containing the sequence records in the database.

Returns the number of sequence records written to the file.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**References**

ES Wright (2016) "Using DECIPHER v2.0 to Analyze Big Biological Sequence Data in R". The R Journal, **8(1)**, 352-359.

**Examples**

```
if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {
  db <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.sqlite", package="DECIPHER")
  tf <- tempfile()
  DB2Seqs(tf, db, limit=10)
  file.show(tf) # press 'q' to exit
  unlink(tf)
}
```

---

deltaGrules

*Free Energy of Hybridization of Probe/Target Quadruplets on Microarrays*

---

**Description**

An 8D array with four adjacent base pairs of the probe and target sequences at a time. Each dimension has five elements defining the nucleotide at that position ("A", "C", "G", "T", or "-"). The array contains the standard Gibbs free energy change of probe binding (dG, [kcal/mol]) for every quadruple base pairing.

**Usage**

```
data(deltaGrules)
```

**Format**

The format is: num [1:5, 1:5, 1:5, 1:5, 1:5, 1:5, 1:5, 1:5] -0.141 0 0 0 0 ... - attr(\*, "dimnames")=List of 8 ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "T" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "T" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "T" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "T" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "T" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "T" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "T" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "T" ...

**Details**

The first four dimensions correspond to the four probe positions from 5' to 3'. The fifth to eighth dimensions correspond to the four positions from 5' to 3' of the target sequence.

**Source**

Data obtained using NimbleGen microarrays and a Linear Free Energy Model developed by Yilmaz *et al.*



---

 deltaHrules

*Change in Enthalpy of Hybridization of DNA/DNA Quadruplets in Solution*


---

### Description

An 8D array with four adjacent base pairs of the DNA duplex. Each dimension has five elements defining the nucleotide at that position ("A", "C", "G", "T", or "-"). The array contains the standard enthalpy change of probe binding (dH, [kcal/mol]) for every quadruple base pairing.

### Usage

```
data(deltaHrules)
```

### Format

The format is: num [1:5, 1:5, 1:5, 1:5, 1:5, 1:5, 1:5, 1:5] -7.97 0 0 0 0 ... - attr(\*, "dimnames")=List of 8 ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "T" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "T" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "T" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "T" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "T" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "T" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "T" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "T" ...

### Details

The first four dimensions correspond to the four top strand positions from 5' to 3'. The fifth to eighth dimensions correspond to the four bottom strand positions from 5' to 3'.

### Source

Data from a variety of publications by SantaLucia *et al.*

### References

SantaLucia, J., Jr., & Hicks, D. (2004) The Thermodynamics of DNA Structural Motifs. Annual Review of Biophysics and Biomolecular Structure, 33(1), 415-440. doi:10.1146/annurev.biophys.32.110601.141800.

### Examples

```
data(deltaHrules)
# dH of the duplex AGCT / A-CT pairing
deltaHrules["A", "G", "C", "T", "A", "-", "C", "T"]
```

---

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| deltaHrulesRNA | <i>Change in Enthalpy of Hybridization of RNA/RNA Quadruplets in Solution</i> |
|----------------|---|

---

### Description

An 8D array with four adjacent base pairs of the RNA duplex. Each dimension has five elements defining the nucleotide at that position ("A", "C", "G", "U", or "-"). The array contains the standard enthalpy change of probe binding (dH, [kcal/mol]) for every quadruple base pairing.

### Usage

```
data(deltaHrulesRNA)
```

### Format

The format is: num [1:5, 1:5, 1:5, 1:5, 1:5, 1:5, 1:5, 1:5] -6.55 0 0 0 0 ... - attr(\*, "dimnames")=List of 8 ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "U" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "U" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "U" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "U" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "U" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "U" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "U" ... ..\$ : chr [1:5] "A" "C" "G" "U" ...

### Details

The first four dimensions correspond to the four top strand positions from 5' to 3'. The fifth to eighth dimensions correspond to the four bottom strand positions from 5' to 3'.

### Source

Data from a variety of publications by SantaLucia *et al.*

### References

SantaLucia, J., Jr., & Hicks, D. (2004) The Thermodynamics of DNA Structural Motifs. Annual Review of Biophysics and Biomolecular Structure, 33(1), 415-440. doi:10.1146/annurev.biophys.32.110601.141800.

### Examples

```
data(deltaHrulesRNA)
# dH of the duplex AGCU / A-CU pairing
deltaHrulesRNA["A", "G", "C", "U", "A", "-", "C", "U"]
```







**Description**

Chooses the set of microarray probes maximizing sensitivity and specificity to each target consensus sequence.

**Usage**

```
DesignArray(myDNAStringSet,
            maxProbeLength = 24,
            minProbeLength = 20,
            maxPermutations = 4,
            numRecordedMismatches = 500,
            numProbes = 10,
            start = 1,
            end = NULL,
            maxOverlap = 5,
            hybridizationFormamide = 10,
            minMeltingFormamide = 15,
            maxMeltingFormamide = 20,
            minScore = -1e+12,
            processors = 1,
            verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

- myDNAStringSet** A DNAStringSet object of aligned consensus sequences.
- maxProbeLength** The maximum length of probes, not including the poly-T spacer. Ideally less than 27 nucleotides.
- minProbeLength** The minimum length of probes, not including the poly-T spacer. Ideally more than 18 nucleotides.
- maxPermutations**  
The maximum number of probe permutations required to represent a target site. For example, if a target site has an 'N' then 4 probes are required because probes cannot be ambiguous. Typically fewer permutations are preferable because this requires less space on the microarray and simplifies interpretation of the results.
- numRecordedMismatches**  
The maximum number of recorded potential cross-hybridizations for any target site.
- numProbes** The target number of probes on the microarray per input consensus sequence.
- start** Integer specifying the starting position in the alignment where potential forward primer target sites begin. Preferably a position that is included in most sequences in the alignment.

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| end                    | Integer specifying the ending position in the alignment where potential reverse primer target sites end. Preferably a position that is included in most sequences in the alignment.  |
| maxOverlap             | Maximum overlap in nucleotides between target sites on the sequence.   |
| hybridizationFormamide | The formamide concentration (% vol/vol) used in hybridization at 42 degrees Celsius. Note that this concentration is used to approximate hybridization efficiency of cross-amplifications.   |
| minMeltingFormamide    | The minimum melting point formamide concentration (% vol/vol) of the designed probes. The melting point is defined as the concentration where half of the template is bound to probe.  |
| maxMeltingFormamide    | The maximum melting point formamide concentration (% vol/vol) of the designed probes. Must be greater than the minMeltingFormamide.  |
| minScore               | The minimum score of designed probes before exclusion. A greater minScore will accelerate the code because more target sites will be excluded from consideration. However, if the minScore is too high it will prevent any target sites from being recorded. |
| processors             | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.   |
| verbose                | Logical indicating whether to display progress.  |

### Details

The algorithm begins by determining the optimal length of probes required to meet the input constraints while maximizing sensitivity to the target consensus sequence at the specified hybridization formamide concentration. This set of potential target sites is then scored based on the possibility of cross-hybridizing to the other non-target sequences. The set of probes is returned with the minimum possibility of cross-hybridizing.

### Value

A `data.frame` with the optimal set of probes matching the specified constraints. Each row lists the probe's target sequence (name), start position, length in nucleotides, start and end position in the sequence alignment, number of permutations, score, melt point in percent formamide at 42 degrees Celsius, hybridization efficiency (`hyb_eff`), target site, and probe(s). Probes are designed such that the stringency is determined by the equilibrium hybridization conditions and not subsequent washing steps.

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### References

ES Wright et al. (2013) Identification of Bacterial and Archaeal Communities From Source to Tap. Water Research Foundation, Denver, CO.

DR Noguera, et al. (2014). Mathematical tools to optimize the design of oligonucleotide probes and primers. *Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology*. doi:10.1007/s00253-014-6165-x.

### See Also

[Array2Matrix](#), [NNLS](#)

### Examples

```
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNASTringSet(fas)
names(dna) <- 1:length(dna)
probes <- DesignArray(dna)
probes[1,]
```

---

DesignPrimers

*Design PCR Primers Targeting a Specific Group of Sequences*

---

### Description

Assists in the design of primer sets targeting a specific group of sequences while minimizing the potential to cross-amplify other groups of sequences.

### Usage

```
DesignPrimers(tiles,
              identifier = "",
              start = 1,
              end = NULL,
              minLength = 17,
              maxLength = 26,
              maxPermutations = 4,
              minCoverage = 0.9,
              minGroupCoverage = 0.2,
              annealingTemp = 64,
              P = 4e-07,
              monovalent = 0.07,
              divalent = 0.003,
              dNTPs = 8e-04,
              minEfficiency = 0.8,
              worstScore = -Inf,
              numPrimerSets = 0,
              minProductSize = 75,
              maxProductSize = 1200,
              maxSearchSize = 1500,
              batchSize = 1000,
              maxDistance = 0.4,
              primerDimer = 1e-07,
```

```

ragged5Prime = TRUE,
taqEfficiency = TRUE,
induceMismatch = FALSE,
processors = 1,
verbose = TRUE)

```

### Arguments

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| tiles            | A set of tiles representing each group of sequences, as in the format created by the function TileSeqs.   |
| identifier       | Optional character string used to narrow the search results to those matching a specific identifier. Determines the target group(s) for which primers will be designed. If "" then all identifiers are selected.  |
| start            | Integer specifying the starting position in the alignment where potential forward primer target sites begin. Preferably a position that is included in most sequences in the alignment.   |
| end              | Integer specifying the ending position in the alignment where potential reverse primer target sites end. Preferably a position that is included in most sequences in the alignment.   |
| minLength        | Integer providing the minimum length of primers to consider in the design.  |
| maxLength        | Integer providing the maximum length of primers to consider in the design, which must be less than or equal to the maxLength of tiles.  |
| maxPermutations  | Integer providing the maximum number of permutations considered as part of a forward or reverse primer set.   |
| minCoverage      | Numeric giving the minimum fraction of the target group's sequences that must be covered with the primer set.   |
| minGroupCoverage | Numeric giving the minimum fraction of the target group that must have sequence information (not terminal gaps) in the region covered by the primer set.  |
| annealingTemp    | Numeric indicating the desired annealing temperature that will be used in the PCR experiment.   |
| P                | Numeric giving the molar concentration of primers in the reaction.  |
| monovalent       | The molar concentration of monovalent ([Na] and [K]) ions in solution that will be used to determine a sodium equivalent concentration.   |
| divalent         | The molar concentration of divalent ([Mg]) ions in solution that will be used to determine a sodium equivalent concentration.   |
| dNTPs            | Numeric giving the molar concentration of free nucleotides added to the solution that will be used to determine a sodium equivalent concentration.  |
| minEfficiency    | Numeric giving the minimum efficiency of hybridization desired for the primer set. Note that an efficiency of 99% (0.99) will greatly lower predicted specificity of the primer set, however an efficiency of 50% (0.5) may be too low in actuality to amplify the target group due to error in melt temperature predictions. |

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| worstScore     | Numeric specifying the score cutoff to remove target sites from consideration. For example, a worstScore of -5 will remove all primer sets scoring below -5, although this may eventually result in no primer sets meeting the design criteria.   |
| numPrimerSets  | Integer giving the optimal number of primer sets (forward and reverse primer sets) to design. If set to zero then all possible forward and reverse primers are returned, but the primer sets minimizing potential cross-amplifications are not chosen.  |
| minProductSize | Integer giving the minimum number of nucleotides desired in the PCR product.  |
| maxProductSize | Integer giving the maximum number of nucleotides desired in the PCR product.  |
| maxSearchSize  | Integer giving the maximum number of nucleotides to search for false priming upstream and downstream of the expected binding site.  |
| batchSize      | Integer specifying the number of primers to simulate hybridization per batch that is passed to CalculateEfficiencyPCR.  |
| maxDistance    | Numeric specifying the maximal fraction of mismatched base pairings on a rolling basis beginning from the 3' end of the primer.   |
| primerDimer    | Numeric giving the maximum amplification efficiency of potential primer-dimer products.   |
| ragged5Prime   | Logical specifying whether the 5' end or 3' end of primer permutations targeting the same site should be varying lengths.   |
| taqEfficiency  | Logical determining whether to make use of elongation efficiency and maxDistance to increase predictive accuracy for <i>Taq</i> DNA Polymerase amplifying primers with mismatches near the 3' terminus. Note that this should be set to FALSE if using a high-fidelity polymerase with 3' to 5' exonuclease activity. |
| induceMismatch | Logical or integer specifying whether to induce a mismatch in the primer with the template DNA. If TRUE then a mismatch is induced at the 6th primer position. If an integer value is provided between 2 and 6 then a mismatch is induced in that primer position, where the 3'-end is defined as position 1.         |
| processors     | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |
| verbose        | Logical indicating whether to display progress.   |

## Details

Primers are designed for use with *Taq* DNA Polymerase to maximize sensitivity and specificity for the target group of sequences. The design makes use of *Taq*'s bias against certain 3' terminal mismatch types in order to increase specificity further than can be achieved with hybridization efficiency alone.

Primers are designed from a set of tiles to target each identifier while minimizing affinity for all other tiled groups. Arguments provide constraints that ensure the designed primer sets meet the specified criteria as well as being optimized for the particular experimental conditions. A search is conducted through all tiles in the same alignment position to estimate the chance of cross-amplification with a non-target group.

If numPrimers is greater than or equal to one then the set of forward and reverse primers that minimizes potential false positive overlap is returned. This will also initiate a thorough search

through all target sites upstream and downstream of the expected binding sites to ensure that the primers do not bind to nearby positions. Lowering the `maxSearchSize` will speed up the thorough search at the expense of potentially missing an unexpected target site. The number of possible primer sets assessed is increased with the size of `numPrimers`.

### Value

A different `data.frame` will be returned depending on number of primer sets requested. If no primer sets are required then columns contain the forward and reverse primers for every possible position scored by their potential to amplify other identified groups. If one or more primer sets are requested then columns contain information for the optimal set of forward and reverse primers that could be used in combination to give the fewest potential cross-amplifications.

### Note

The program `OligoArrayAux` (<http://www.unafold.org/Dinamelt/software/oligoarrayaux.php>) must be installed in a location accessible by the system. For example, the following code should print the installed `OligoArrayAux` version when executed from the R console:

```
system("hybrid-min -V")
```

To install `OligoArrayAux` from the downloaded source folder on Unix-like platforms, open the shell (or Terminal on Mac OS) and type:

```
cd oligoarrayaux # change directory to the correct folder name
./configure
make
sudo make install
```

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### References

ES Wright et al. (2013) "Exploiting Extension Bias in PCR to Improve Primer Specificity in Ensembles of Nearly Identical DNA Templates." *Environmental Microbiology*, doi:10.1111/1462-2920.12259.

### See Also

[AmplifyDNA](#), [CalculateEfficiencyPCR](#), [DesignSignatures](#), [TileSeqs](#)

### Examples

```
if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {
  db <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.sqlite", package="DECIPHER")
  # not run (must have OligoArrayAux installed first):
  ## Not run: tiles <- TileSeqs(db,
  identifier=c("Rhizobiales", "Sphingomonadales"))
  ## End(Not run)
```

```
## Not run: primers <- DesignPrimers(tiles, identifier="Rhizobiales",
  start=280, end=420, minProductSize=50, numPrimerSets=1)
## End(Not run)
}
```

---

 DesignProbes

*Design FISH Probes Targeting a Specific Group of Sequences*


---

## Description

Assists in the design of single or dual probes targeting a specific group of sequences while minimizing the potential to cross-hybridize with other groups of sequences.

## Usage

```
DesignProbes(tiles,
  identifier = "",
  start = 1,
  end = NULL,
  minLength = 17,
  maxLength = 26,
  maxPermutations = 4,
  minCoverage = 0.9,
  minGroupCoverage = 0.2,
  hybTemp = 46,
  P = 2.5e-07,
  Na = 1,
  FA = 35,
  minEfficiency = 0.5,
  worstScore = -Inf,
  numProbeSets = 0,
  batchSize = 1000,
  target = "SSU",
  verbose = TRUE)
```

## Arguments

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| tiles      | A set of tiles representing each group of sequences, as in the format created by the function TileSeqs.   |
| identifier | Optional character string used to narrow the search results to those matching a specific identifier. Determines the target group(s) for which probes will be designed. If "" then all identifiers are selected. |
| start      | Integer specifying the starting position in the alignment where potential target sites begin. Preferably a position that is included in most sequences in the alignment.  |



|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| end              | Integer specifying the ending position in the alignment where potential target sites end. Preferably a position that is included in most sequences in the alignment.   |
| minLength        | Integer providing the minimum length of probes to consider in the design.  |
| maxLength        | Integer providing the maximum length of probes to consider in the design, which must be less than or equal to the maxLength of tiles.  |
| maxPermutations  | Integer providing the maximum number of probe permutations required to reach the desired coverage of a target site.  |
| minCoverage      | Numeric giving the minimum fraction of the target group's sequences that must be covered by the designed probe(s).   |
| minGroupCoverage | Numeric giving the minimum fraction of the target group that must have sequence information (not terminal gaps) in the target site's region.   |
| hybTemp          | Numeric specifying the hybridization temperature, typically 46 degrees Celsius.  |
| P                | Numeric giving the molar concentration of probes during hybridization.   |
| Na               | Numeric giving the molar sodium concentration in the hybridization buffer. Values may range between 0.01M and 1M. Note that salt correction from 1 molar is not available for the thermodynamic rules of RNA/RNA interactions.                                       |
| FA               | Numeric concentration (as percent v/v) of the denaturant formamide in the hybridization buffer.  |
| minEfficiency    | Numeric giving the minimum equilibrium hybridization efficiency desired for designed probe(s) at the defined experimental conditions.  |
| worstScore       | Numeric specifying the score cutoff to remove target sites from consideration. For example, a worstScore of -5 will remove all probes scoring below -5, although this may eventually result in no probes meeting the design criteria.                                |
| numProbeSets     | Integer giving the optimal number of dual probe sets to design. If set to zero then all potential single probes are returned, and the probe sets minimizing potential false cross-hybridizations are not chosen.   |
| batchSize        | Integer specifying the number of probes to simulate hybridization per batch that is passed to CalculateEfficiencyFISH.   |
| target           | The target molecule used in the generation of tiles. Either "SSU" for the small-subunit rRNA, "LSU" for the large-subunit rRNA, or "Other". Used to determine the domain for dG3 calculations, which is plus or minus 200 nucleotides of the target site if "Other". |
| verbose          | Logical indicating whether to display progress.  |

### Details

Probes are designed to maximize sensitivity and specificity to the target group(s) (identifier(s)). If numProbeSets > 0 then that many pairs of probes with minimal cross-hybridization overlap are returned, enabling increased specificity with a dual-color approach.

Probes are designed from a set of tiles to target each identifier while minimizing affinity for all other tiled groups. Arguments provide constraints that ensure the designed probes meet the specified

criteria as well as being optimized for the particular experimental conditions. A search is conducted through all tiles in the same alignment position to estimate the chance of cross-hybridization with a non-target group.

Two models are used in design, both of which were experimentally calibrated using denaturation profiles from 5 organisms belonging to all three domains of life. Probe lengths are chosen to meet the `minEfficiency` using a fast model of probe-target hybridization. Candidate probes are then confirmed using a slower model that also takes into account probe-folding and target-folding. Finally, probes are scored for their inability to cross-hybridize with non-target groups by using the fast model and taking into account any mismatches.

### Value

A different `data.frame` will be returned depending on number of primer sets requested. If no probe sets are required then columns contain the designed probes for every possible position scored by their potential to cross-hybridize with other identified groups. If one or more probe sets are requested then columns contain information for the optimal set of probes (probe one and probe two) that could be used in combination to give the fewest potential cross-hybridizations.

### Note

The program `OligoArrayAux` (<http://www.unafold.org/Dinamelt/software/oligoarrayaux.php>) must be installed in a location accessible by the system. For example, the following code should print the installed `OligoArrayAux` version when executed from the R console:

```
system("hybrid-min -V")
```

To install `OligoArrayAux` from the downloaded source folder on Unix-like platforms, open the shell (or Terminal on Mac OS) and type:

```
cd oligoarrayaux # change directory to the correct folder name
./configure
make
sudo make install
```

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <[eswright@pitt.edu](mailto:eswright@pitt.edu)>

### References

ES Wright et al. (2014) "Automated Design of Probes for rRNA-Targeted Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization Reveals the Advantages of Using Dual Probes for Accurate Identification." *Applied and Environmental Microbiology*, doi:10.1128/AEM.01685-14.

### See Also

[CalculateEfficiencyFISH](#), [TileSeqs](#)

**Examples**

```

if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {
  db <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.sqlite", package="DECIPHER")
  # not run (must have OligoArrayAux installed first):
  ## Not run: tiles <- TileSeqs(db,
    identifier=c("Rhizobiales", "Sphingomonadales"))
  ## End(Not run)
  ## Not run: probes <- DesignProbes(tiles, identifier="Rhizobiales",
    start=280, end=420)
  ## End(Not run)
}

```

---

 DesignSignatures

*Design PCR Primers for Amplifying Group-Specific Signatures*


---

**Description**

Aids the design of pairs of primers for amplifying a unique “signature” from each group of sequences. Signatures are distinct PCR products that can be differentiated by their length, melt temperature, or sequence.

**Usage**

```

DesignSignatures(dbFile,
  tblName = "Seqs",
  identifier = "",
  focusID = NA,
  type = "melt",
  resolution = 0.5,
  levels = 10,
  enzymes = NULL,
  minLength = 17,
  maxLength = 26,
  maxPermutations = 4,
  annealingTemp = 64,
  P = 4e-07,
  monovalent = 0.07,
  divalent = 0.003,
  dNTPs = 8e-04,
  minEfficiency = 0.8,
  ampEfficiency = 0.5,
  numPrimerSets = 100,
  minProductSize = 70,
  maxProductSize = 400,
  kmerSize = 8,
  searchPrimers = 500,
  maxDictionary = 20000,

```

```

primerDimer = 1e-07,
pNorm = 1,
taqEfficiency = TRUE,
processors = 1,
verbose = TRUE)

```

### Arguments

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| dbFile          | A database connection object or a character string specifying the path to a SQLite database file.  |
| tblName         | Character string specifying the table where the DNA sequences are located.   |
| identifier      | Optional character string used to narrow the search results to those matching a specific identifier. Determines the target group(s) for which primers will be designed. If "" then all identifiers are selected.         |
| focusID         | Optional character string specifying which of the identifiers will be used in the initial step of designing primers. If NA (the default), then the identifier with the most sequence information is used as the focusID. |
| type            | Character string indicating the type of signature being used to differentiate the PCR products from each group. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "melt", "length", or "sequence".                              |
| resolution      | Numeric specifying the "resolution" of the experiment, or a vector giving the boundaries of bins. (See details section below.)   |
| levels          | Numeric giving the number of "levels" that can be distinguished in each bin. (See details section below.)  |
| enzymes         | Named character vector providing the cut sites of one or more restriction enzymes. Cut sites must be delineated in the same format as <a href="#">RESTRICTION_ENZYMES</a> .  |
| minLength       | Integer providing the minimum length of primers to consider in the design.   |
| maxLength       | Integer providing the maximum length of primers to consider in the design.   |
| maxPermutations | Integer providing the maximum number of permutations allowed in a forward or reverse primer to attain greater coverage of sequences.   |
| annealingTemp   | Numeric indicating the desired annealing temperature that will be used in the PCR experiment.  |
| P               | Numeric giving the molar concentration of primers in the reaction.   |
| monovalent      | The molar concentration of monovalent ([Na] and [K]) ions in solution that will be used to determine a sodium equivalent concentration.  |
| divalent        | The molar concentration of divalent ([Mg]) ions in solution that will be used to determine a sodium equivalent concentration.  |
| dNTPs           | Numeric giving the molar concentration of free nucleotides added to the solution that will be used to determine a sodium equivalent concentration.   |
| minEfficiency   | Numeric giving the minimum efficiency of hybridization desired for the primer set.   |

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| ampEfficiency  | Numeric giving the minimum efficiency required for theoretical amplification of the primers. Note that ampEfficiency must be less than or equal to minEfficiency. Lower values of ampEfficiency will allow for more PCR products, although very low values are unrealistic experimentally.   |
| numPrimerSets  | Integer giving the optimal number of primer sets (forward and reverse primer sets) to design.  |
| minProductSize | Integer giving the minimum number of nucleotides desired in the PCR product.   |
| maxProductSize | Integer giving the maximum number of nucleotides desired in the PCR product.   |
| kmerSize       | Integer giving the size of k-mers to use in the preliminary search for potential primers.  |
| searchPrimers  | Numeric specifying the number of forward and reverse primers to use in searching for potential PCR products. A lower value will result in a faster search, but potentially neglect some useful primers.  |
| maxDictionary  | Numeric giving the maximum number of primers to search for simultaneously in any given step.   |
| primerDimer    | Numeric giving the maximum amplification efficiency of potential primer-dimer products.  |
| pNorm          | Numeric specifying the power ( $p > 0$ ) used in calculating the $L^p$ -norm when scoring primer pairs. By default ( $p = 1$ ), the score is equivalent to the average difference between pairwise signatures. When $p < 1$ , many small differences will be preferred over fewer large differences, and vice-versa when $p > 1$ . This enables prioritizing primer pairs that will yield a greater number of unique signatures ( $p < 1$ ), or fewer distinct, but more dissimilar, signatures ( $p > 1$ ). |
| taqEfficiency  | Logical determining whether to make use of elongation efficiency to increase predictive accuracy for <i>Taq</i> DNA Polymerase amplifying primers with mismatches near the 3' terminus. Note that this should be set to FALSE if using a high-fidelity polymerase with 3' to 5' exonuclease activity.  |
| processors     | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.   |
| verbose        | Logical indicating whether to display progress.  |

## Details

Signatures are group-specific PCR products that can be differentiated by either their melt temperature profile, length, or sequence. DesignSignatures assists in finding the optimal pair of forward and reverse primers for obtaining a distinguishable signature from each group of sequences. Groups are delineated by their unique identifier in the database. The algorithm works by progressively narrowing the search for optimal primers: (1) the most frequent k-mers are found; (2) these are used to design primers initially matching the focusID group; (3) the most common forward and reverse primers are selected based on all of the groups, and ambiguity is added up to maxPermutations; (4) a final search is performed to find the optimal forward and reverse primer. Pairs of primers are scored by the distance between the signatures generated for each group, which depends on the type of experiment.

The arguments resolution and levels control the theoretical resolving power of the experiment. The signature for a group is discretized or grouped into “bins” each with a certain magnitude of

the signal. Here resolution determines the separation between distinguishable “bins”, and levels controls the range of values in each bin. A high-accuracy experiment would have many bins and/or many levels. While levels is interpreted similarly for every type of experiment, resolution is treated differently depending on type. If type is “melt”, then resolution can be either a vector of different melt temperatures, or a single number giving the change in temperatures that can be differentiated. A high-resolution melt (HRM) assay would typically have a resolution between 0.25 and 1 degree Celsius. If type is “length” then resolution is either the number of bins between the minProductSize and maxProductSize, or the bin boundaries. For example, resolution can be lower (wider bins) at long lengths, and higher (narrower bins) at shorter lengths. If type is “sequence” then resolution sets the k-mer size used in differentiating amplicons. Oftentimes, 4 to 6-mers are used for the classification of amplicons.

The signatures can be diversified by using a restriction enzyme to digest the PCR products when type is “melt” or “length”. If enzymes are supplied then the an additional search is made to find the best enzyme to use with each pair of primers. In this case, the output includes all of the primer pairs, as well as any enzymes that will digest the PCR products of that primer pair. The output is rescored to rank the top primer pair and enzyme combination. Note that enzymes is inapplicable when type is “sequence” because restriction enzymes do not alter the sequence of the DNA. Also, it is recommended that only a subset of the available RESTRICTION\_ENZYMES are used as input enzymes in order to accelerate the search for the best enzyme.

### Value

A data.frame with the top-scoring pairs of forward and reverse primers, their score, the total number of PCR products, and associated columns for the restriction enzyme (if enzyme is not NULL).

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### References

Wright, E.S. & Vetsigian, K.H. (2016) "DesignSignatures: a tool for designing primers that yields amplicons with distinct signatures." *Bioinformatics*, doi:10.1093/bioinformatics/btw047.

### See Also

[AmplifyDNA](#), [CalculateEfficiencyPCR](#), [DesignPrimers](#), [DigestDNA](#), [Disambiguate](#), [MeltDNA](#), [RESTRICTION\\_ENZYMES](#)

### Examples

```
if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {
  # below are suggested inputs for different types of experiments
  db <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.sqlite", package="DECIPHER")

  ## Not run:
  # High Resolution Melt (HRM) assay:
  primers <- DesignSignatures(db,
    resolution=seq(75, 100, 0.25), # degrees Celsius
    minProductSize=55, # base pairs
```

```

        maxProductSize=400)

# Primers for next-generation sequencing:
primers <- DesignSignatures(db,
  type="sequence",
  minProductSize=300, # base pairs
  maxProductSize=700,
  resolution=5, # 5-mers
  levels=5)

# Primers for community fingerprinting:
primers <- DesignSignatures(db,
  type="length",
  levels=2, # presence/absence
  minProductSize=200, # base pairs
  maxProductSize=1400,
  resolution=c(seq(200, 700, 3),
               seq(705, 1000, 5),
               seq(1010, 1400, 10)))

# Primers for restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP):
data(RESTRICTION_ENZYMES)
myEnzymes <- RESTRICTION_ENZYMES[c("EcoRI", "HinfI", "Sali")]
primers <- DesignSignatures(db,
  type="length",
  levels=2, # presence/absence
  minProductSize=200, # base pairs
  maxProductSize=600,
  resolution=c(seq(50, 100, 3),
               seq(105, 200, 5),
               seq(210, 600, 10)),
  enzymes=myEnzymes)

## End(Not run)
}

```

---

DetectRepeats

*Detect Repeats in a Sequence*


---

## Description

Detects approximate copies of sequence patterns that likely arose from duplication events and therefore share a common ancestor.

## Usage

```

DetectRepeats(myXStringSet,
  type = "tandem",
  minScore = 10,
  allScores = FALSE,

```

```

maxCopies = 1000,
maxPeriod = 1000,
maxFailures = 3,
maxShifts = 5,
alphabet = AA_REDUCED[[47]],
useEmpirical = TRUE,
correctBackground = TRUE,
processors = 1,
verbose = TRUE,
...)
```

### Arguments

|                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| myXStringSet      | An AAStringSet, DNASTringSet, or RNASTringSet object of unaligned sequences.  |
| type              | Character string indicating the type of repeats to detect. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "tandem", "interspersed", or "both". Only "tandem" is possible when myXStringSet is an AAStringSet. (See details section below.)  |
| minScore          | Numeric giving the minimum score of repeats in myXStringSet to report.  |
| allScores         | Logical specifying whether all repeats should be returned (TRUE) or only the top scoring repeat when there are multiple overlapping matches in the same region.   |
| maxCopies         | Numeric defining the maximum copy number of tandem repeat. Since alignment complexity is quadratic in the number of repeat copies, setting a limit on the repeat copy number prevents very long repeats from becoming rate limiting.  |
| maxPeriod         | Numeric indicating the maximum periodicity of tandem repeats to consider. Interspersed repeats will only be detected that are at least maxPeriod nucleotides apart.   |
| maxFailures       | Numeric determining the maximum number of failing attempts to extend a repeat that are permitted. Numbers greater than zero may increase accuracy at the expense of speed, with decreasing marginal returns as maxFailures gets higher.   |
| maxShifts         | Numeric determining the maximum number of failing attempts to shift a repeat left or right that are permitted. Numbers greater than zero may increase accuracy at the expense of speed, with decreasing marginal returns as maxShifts gets higher.  |
| alphabet          | Character vector of amino acid groupings used to reduce the 20 standard amino acids into smaller groups. Alphabet reduction helps to find more distant homologies between sequences. A non-reduced amino acid alphabet can be used by setting alphabet equal to AA_STANDARD. Only applicable if myXStringSet is an AAStringSet. |
| useEmpirical      | Logical specifying whether to use empirical signals of structurally-determined tandem repeats when scoring. Empirical signals include the number of repeats, their periodicity, and their amino acid composition when myXStringSet is an AAStringSet.   |
| correctBackground | Logical controlling whether to correct the substitution matrix for the background distribution of letter frequencies on a per sequence basis.   |



|            |   |
|------------|---|
| processors | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.          |
| verbose    | Logical indicating whether to display progress.   |
| ...        | Further arguments to be passed directly to <a href="#">FindSynteny</a> if type is "interspersed" or "both". |

## Details

Many sequences are composed of a substantial fraction of repetitive sequence. Two main forms of repetition are tandem repeats and interspersed repeats, which can be caused by duplication events followed by divergence. Detecting duplications is challenging because of variability in repeat length and composition due to evolution. The significance of a repeat can be quantified by its time since divergence from a common ancestor. DetectRepeats uses a seed-and-extend approach to identify candidate repeats, and tests whether a set of repeats is statistically significant using a background-corrected substitution matrix and gap (i.e., insertion and deletion) penalties. A higher score implies the repeats are more conserved and, therefore, are more likely to have diverged within a finite amount of time from a common ancestor. When `myXStringSet` is an `AAStringSet`, similarity includes agreement among predicted secondary structures.

Two possible types of repeats are detectable: \* type is "tandem" (the default) or "both" Contiguous approximate copies of a nucleotide or amino acid sequence. First, repeated k-mers are identified along the length of the input sequence(s). Once a k-mer seed is identified, repeated attempts are made to extend the repeat left and right, as well as optimize the beginning and ending positions. \* type is "interspersed" or "both" Dispersed approximate copies of a nucleotide sequence on the same strand or opposite strands. These are identified with [FindSynteny](#), aligned with [AlignSynteny](#), and then scored using the same statistical framework as tandem repeats.

The highest scoring repeat in each region is returned, unless `allScores` is TRUE, in which case overlapping repeats are permitted in the result.

## Value

If type is "tandem", a `data.frame` giving the "Index" of the sequence in `myXStringSet`, "Begin" and "End" positions of tandem repeats, "Left" and "Right" positions of each repeat, and its "Score".

If type is "interspersed", a `data.frame` similar to the matrix in the lower diagonal of Synteny objects (see [Synteny-class](#)).

If type is "both", a list with the above two elements.

## Author(s)

Erik Wright <[eswright@pitt.edu](mailto:eswright@pitt.edu)>

## References

Schaper, E., et al. (2012). Repeat or not repeat?-Statistical validation of tandem repeat prediction in genomic sequences. *Nucleic Acids Research*, **40(20)**, 10005-17.

**See Also**[ScoreAlignment](#)**Examples**

```

fas <- system.file("extdata", "Human_huntingtin_cds.fas.gz", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNASet(fas)

x <- DetectRepeats(dna)
x

# number of tandem repeats
lengths(x[, "Left"])

# average periodicity of tandem repeats
per <- mapply(function(a, b) b - a + 1,
  x[, "Left"],
  x[, "Right"],
  SIMPLIFY=FALSE)
sapply(per, mean)

# extract a tandem repeat
i <- 1
reps <- extractAt(dna[[x[i, "Index"]]],
  IRanges(x[[i, "Left"]], x[[i, "Right"]]))
reps
reps <- AlignSeqs(reps, verbose=FALSE) # align the repeats
reps
BrowseSeqs(reps)

# highlight tandem repeats in the sequence
colors <- c("deeppink", "deepskyblue")
cols <- lapply(colors, function(x) col2rgb(x)/255)
cols <- vector("list", length(dna))
for (i in seq_along(cols)) {
  cols[[i]] <- matrix(0, nrow=3, ncol=width(dna)[i])
  for (j in which(x[, "Index"] == i)) {
    left <- x[[j, "Left"]]
    right <- x[[j, "Right"]]
    n <- 0
    for (k in seq_along(left)) {
      r <- left[k]:right[k]
      n <- n + 1
      if (n > length(colors))
        n <- 1
      cols[[i]][, r] <- colors[[n]]
    }
  }
}
BrowseSeqs(dna, patterns=cols)

# find interspersed (rather than tandem) repeats

```

```

data(yeastSEQCHR1)
chr1 <- DNASTringSet(yeastSEQCHR1)

if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {
  z <- DetectRepeats(chr1, type="interspersed")
  z
}

```

---

## DigestDNA

## Simulate Restriction Digestion of DNA

---

### Description

Restriction enzymes can be used to cut double-stranded DNA into fragments at specific cut sites. DigestDNA performs an *in-silico* restriction digest of the input DNA sequence(s) given one or more restriction sites.

### Usage

```

DigestDNA(sites,
          myDNASTringSet,
          type = "fragments",
          strand = "both")

```

### Arguments

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| sites          | A character vector of DNA recognition sequences and their enzymes' corresponding cut site(s).   |
| myDNASTringSet | A DNASTringSet object or character vector with one or more sequences in 5' to 3' orientation.   |
| type           | Character string indicating the type of results desired. This should be (an abbreviation of) either "fragments" or "positions".   |
| strand         | Character string indicating the strand(s) to cut. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "both", "top", or "bottom". The top strand is defined as the input DNASTringSet sequence, and the bottom strand is its reverse complement. |

### Details

In the context of a restriction digest experiment with a known DNA sequence, it can be useful to predict the expected DNA fragments *in-silico*. Restriction enzymes make cuts in double-stranded DNA at specific positions near their recognition site. The recognition site may be somewhat ambiguous, as represented by the IUPAC\_CODE\_MAP. Cuts that occur at different positions on the top and bottom strands result in sticky-ends, whereas those that occur at the same position result in fragments with blunt-ends. Multiple restriction sites can be supplied to simultaneously digest the DNA. In this case, sites for the different restriction enzymes may be overlapping, which could result in multiple close-proximity cuts that would not occur experimentally. Also, note that cut sites will not be matched to non-DNA\_BASES in myDNASTringSet.

**Value**

DigestDNA can return two types of results: cut positions or the resulting DNA fragments corresponding to the top, bottom, or both strands. If type is "positions" then the output is a list with the cut location(s) in each sequence in myDNAStrngSet. The cut location is defined as the position after the cut relative to the 5'-end. For example, a cut at 6 would occur between positions 5 and 6, where the respective strand's 5' nucleotide is defined as position 1.

If type is "fragments" (the default), then the result is a DNAStrngSetList. Each element of the list contains the top and/or bottom strand fragments after digestion of myDNAStrngSet, or the original sequence if no cuts were made. Sequences are named by whether they originated from the top or bottom strand, and list elements are named based on the input DNA sequences. The top strand is defined by myDNAStrngSet as it is input, whereas the bottom strand is its reverse complement.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**See Also**

[DesignSignatures](#), [RESTRICTION\\_ENZYMES](#)

**Examples**

```
# digest hypothetical DNA sequences with BamHI
data(RESTRICTION_ENZYMES)
site <- RESTRICTION_ENZYMES[c("BamHI")]
dna <- DNAStrngSet(c("AAGGATCCAA", "GGGATCAT"))
dna # top strand
reverseComplement(dna) # bottom strand
names(dna) <- c("hyp1", "hyp2")
d <- DigestDNA(site, dna)
d # fragments in a DNAStrngSetList
unlist(d) # all fragments as one DNAStrngSet

# Restriction digest of Yeast Chr. 1 with EcoRI and EcoRV
data(yeastSEQCHR1)
sites <- RESTRICTION_ENZYMES[c("EcoRI", "EcoRV")]
seqs <- DigestDNA(sites, yeastSEQCHR1)
seqs[[1]]

pos <- DigestDNA(sites, yeastSEQCHR1, type="positions")
str(pos)
```

**Description**

Performs the inverse function of `ConsensusSequence` by expanding any ambiguities present in sequences.

**Usage**

```
Disambiguate(myXStringSet)
```

**Arguments**

`myXStringSet` A `DNAStrngSet` or `RNAStringSet` object of sequences.

**Details**

Ambiguity codes in the `IUPAC_CODE_MAP` can be used to represent multiple nucleotides at a single position. Using these letters, multiple oligonucleotide permutations can be represented with a single ambiguous sequence. This function expands each sequence in the `DNAStrngSet` input into all of its permutations. Note that sequences with many ambiguities can result in a very large number of potential permutations.

**Value**

A `DNAStrngSetList` or `RNAStringSetList` with one element for each sequence in `myXStringSet`.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**See Also**

[ConsensusSequence](#)

**Examples**

```
dna <- DNAStrngSet(c("ACST", "NNN"))
dna_list <- Disambiguate(dna)
dna_list[[1]]
dna_list[[2]]
unlist(dna_list)

rna <- RNAStringSet(c("ACGU", "AGAU")) # 2 permutations
rna <- ConsensusSequence(rna) # "ASRU"
Disambiguate(rna) # 4 permutations
```

---

DistanceMatrix      *Calculate the Distances Between Sequences*

---

### Description

Calculates a distance matrix for an XStringSet. Each element of the distance matrix corresponds to the dissimilarity between two sequences in the XStringSet.

### Usage

```
DistanceMatrix(myXStringSet,
               method = "overlap",
               type = "matrix",
               includeTerminalGaps = FALSE,
               penalizeGapLetterMatches = FALSE,
               minCoverage = 0,
               correction = NA,
               substitutionMatrix = NULL,
               frequencies = NULL,
               processors = 1,
               verbose = TRUE)
```

### Arguments

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| myXStringSet             | A DNASTringSet, RNASTringSet, or AAStringSet object of aligned sequences.  |
| type                     | Character string indicating the type of output desired. This should be either "matrix" or "dist". (See value section below.)   |
| method                   | Character string determining the region in which distance is calculated. This should be (an unambiguous abbreviation of) one of "overlap", "shortest", or "longest". The default method ("overlap") calculates distance in the overlapping region between terminal gaps when includeTerminalGaps is FALSE and the entire alignment otherwise. Setting method to "shortest" or "longest" will use the region between the start and end of the shortest or longest sequence, respectively, for each pairwise distance. The method is only relevant when includeTerminalGaps is TRUE. |
| includeTerminalGaps      | Logical specifying whether or not to include terminal gaps ("-" or "." characters on each end of the sequence) into the calculation of distance.   |
| penalizeGapLetterMatches | Logical specifying whether to correct distance for gap-to-letter mismatches. The default (FALSE) ignores gaps paired with letters, and TRUE considers them as mismatches. If NA then gap-to-letter mismatches are only penalized once per run of gaps (i.e., insertion or deletion). If correction is not NA or frequencies is not NULL, the evolutionary distance due to insertion and deletion (Tajima, 1984) is added to the standard distance when penalizeGapLetterMatches is not FALSE.  |

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| minCoverage        | Numeric giving the minimum fraction of sequence positions (not gap or mask) that must be overlapping in each pair. If positive then coverage is relative to the shortest sequence. If negative then coverage is relative to both sequences. Sequences failing to meet minCoverage will be assigned NA distances. Note that completely non-overlapping sequences are always given NA distances, regardless of minCoverage, unless includeTerminalGaps is TRUE and penalizeGapLetterMatches is not FALSE (i.e., distance = 100%). |
| correction         | The evolutionary model used for distance correction. This should be either NA or (an abbreviation of) either "JC69", "K80", "F81+F", "HKY85+F", "T92+F", "TN93+F", "Poisson", or one of the protein MODELS. The default (NA) will return uncorrected (i.e., Hamming) distances. Models with fixed frequencies (+F) are empirically derived from myXStringSet (e.g., "F81+F" or "WAG+F") unless provided as frequencies. (See details section below.)  |
| substitutionMatrix | A symmetric matrix, dist object, or a single character string specifying a substitution matrix. Interpreted as costs if frequencies is NULL (the default), and interpreted as relative substitution rates otherwise. If a built-in substitutionMatrix is named (e.g., "BLOSUM62"), the negative of the matrix is used to obtain distances rather than similarities. Only used if correction is NA. (See examples section below.)  |
| frequencies        | Numeric vector containing relative letter frequencies or NULL (the default) if unnecessary. Must be named and in the same order as substitutionMatrix. Only considered when substitutionMatrix is specified, in which case values are interpreted as stationary frequencies and substitutionMatrix must contain the corresponding substitution when correction is NA (the default).   |
| processors         | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |
| verbose            | Logical indicating whether to display progress.   |

## Details

DistanceMatrix computes pairwise distances between all sequences in myXStringSet. There are three main modes in which DistanceMatrix is typically used: (1) to obtain Hamming distances with or without gap penalties, (2) to obtain phylogenetic distances by correcting for multiple substitutions per site based on a model of evolution, and (3) to obtain normalized distances based on a substitutionMatrix containing transition costs. For (1), distances are in units of differences/site, and the key parameters to consider are penalizeGapLetterMatches and method if includeTerminalGaps is TRUE. For (2), distances are in units of substitutions per site, and the key parameters are correction or substitutionMatrix and frequencies. For (3), distances are in the same units as the substitutionMatrix normalized by the number of shared sites, and substitutionMatrix is the main parameter to consider. These parameters are described in more detail below and several examples are provided in the examples section.

The defaults compute an uncorrected distance matrix representing the Hamming distance between each of the sequences in myXStringSet, also known as the p-distance. That is, matches are assigned a cost of 0 and mismatches are given a cost of 1, and distances is computed by dividing the number of mismatches by the number of matches plus mismatches. Ambiguity can be represented using the characters of the IUPAC\_CODE\_MAP for DNStringSet and RNStringSet inputs, or using the

AMINO\_ACID\_CODE for an AAStringSet input. For example, the distance between an 'N' and any other nucleotide base is zero. The letters B (N or D), J (I or L), Z (Q or E), and X (any letter) are degenerate in the AMINO\_ACID\_CODE.

If includeTerminalGaps = FALSE then terminal gaps ("- or "." characters) are not included in pairwise comparisons. This can be faster since only the positions common to each pair of sequences are compared. Sequences with no overlapping region in the alignment are given a value of NA, unless includeTerminalGaps = TRUE, in which case distance is 100%. Both "-" and "." characters are interpreted as gaps, and masked characters ("+") in either sequence are not considered in distance. The default behavior is to calculate distance as the fraction of positions that differ across the region of the alignment shared by both sequences (not including gaps). Gap-to-letter matches are treated as mismatches if penalizeGapLetterMatches is TRUE. Only the first gap per run of gaps is penalized if penalizeGapLetterMatches is NA, which represents an event based model where insertions and deletions are considered as single events analogous to individual substitutions (also known as a block model).

Multiple correction factors are available to transform distances into an expected number of changes per site. Three models are generic, although two are intended for nucleotides ("JC69" and "F81+F") and one for amino acids ("Poisson"). There are four models specifically for nucleotides ("K80", "HKY85+F", "T92+F", and "TN93+F") that introduce different transition (versus transversion) rates. The analytical formulas for "JC69" and "Poisson" give the exact distance, while the others use approximation formulas to circumvent parameter estimation (McGuire, 1999; Tamura, 1993). In order of decreasing exactness they are: "K80", "F81+F", "HKY85+F", "TN93+F", and "T92+F". Models with fixed frequencies (+F) derive empirical frequencies from the input myXStringSet, unless they are given as frequencies.

The remaining corrections are defined by MODELS of amino acid evolution that provide both a matrix of substitution rates and stationary frequencies. These models can be modified with empirical frequencies (+F), or frequencies can be given separately. It is also feasible to specify the substitutionMatrix (rates) and frequencies separately when correction is NA (the default). A maximum likelihood distance is returned based on fitting

$$P = e^{(Q * d)}$$

, where  $P$  is the observed substitution probabilities and  $Q$  is derived from substitutionMatrix such that

$$Q * frequencies = 0$$

. Here,  $d$  represents twice the estimated number of substitutions per sites that occurred since a pair of sequences most recent common ancestor, i.e., their phylogenetic distance.

If penalizeGapLetterMatches is not FALSE when using a model of evolution, the component of distance due to insertion and deletion is added to the distance (Tajima, 1984). That is, the traditional evolutionary distance due to multiple substitutions is added to

$$-2 * \log \left( n_{xy} / (n_x + n_y)^0 .5 \right)$$

, where  $n_{xy}$  is the number of shared sites,  $n_x$  is the number of sites in one sequence and  $n_y$  is the number in the other. This partly corrects for multiple insertion and deletion events in a related manner to correcting for multiple substitutions per site. The resulting distances can be considered to have units of changes per site, since substitutions, insertions, and deletions all contribute to the distance.



If a substitutionMatrix is given without frequencies, the matrix is interpreted as the cost for each type of substitution. It is also possible to specify substitutionMatrix as a character string (e.g., "BLOSUM62"), and the negative of the built-in substitution matrix is used to obtain distances rather than similarities. This is useful for obtaining pairwise substitution scores according to a cost matrix.

### Value

If type is "matrix", a symmetric matrix where each element is the distance between the sequences referenced by the respective row and column. The dimnames of the matrix correspond to the names of the XStringSet.

If type is "dist", an object of class "dist" that contains the lower triangle of the distance matrix as a vector. Since the distance matrix is symmetric, storing only one triangle is more memory efficient.

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### References

McGuire G., *et al.* (1999) Improved error bounds for genetic distances from DNA sequences. *Biometrics*, **55**(4), 1064-1070.

Tajima, F. and Nei, M. (1984) Estimation of evolutionary distance between nucleotide sequences. *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, **1**(3), 269-285.

Tamura, K. and Nei, M. (1993) Estimation of the number of nucleotide substitutions in the control region of mitochondrial DNA in humans and chimpanzees. *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, **10**(3), 512-526.

### See Also

[MODELS](#), [Treeline](#)

### Examples

```
# example of using the defaults
dna <- DNASTringSet(c("ACTG", "ACCG"))
dna
DistanceMatrix(dna)

# changing the output type to "dist"
d <- DistanceMatrix(dna, type="dist")
d
length(d) # minimal memory space required
m <- as.matrix(d)
length(m) # more memory space required

# supplying an AAStringSet
aa <- AAStringSet(c("ASYK", "ATYK", "CTWN"))
aa
```

```

DistanceMatrix(aa)

# correct for multiple substitutions per site
DistanceMatrix(aa, correction="Poisson")

# defaults compare intersection of internal ranges
dna <- DNASTringSet(c("ANGCT-", "-ACCT-"))
dna
d <- DistanceMatrix(dna)
d
# d[1,2] is 1 base in 4 = 0.25

# compare union of internal positions, without terminal gaps
dna <- DNASTringSet(c("ANGCT-", "-ACCT-"))
dna
d <- DistanceMatrix(dna,
                    includeTerminalGaps=TRUE,
                    penalizeGapLetterMatches=TRUE)
d
# d[1,2] is now 2 bases in 5 = 0.40

# gap ("-") and unknown (".") characters are interchangeable
dna <- DNASTringSet(c("ANGCT.", ".ACCT-"))
dna
d <- DistanceMatrix(dna,
                    includeTerminalGaps=TRUE,
                    penalizeGapLetterMatches=TRUE)
d
# d[1,2] is still 2 bases in 5 = 0.40

# compare different methods for calculating distance
dna <- DNASTringSet(c("--ACTG", "TGAGT-"))
dna
DistanceMatrix(dna, method="overlap") # 1/3
DistanceMatrix(dna, method="shortest",
              includeTerminalGaps=FALSE) # 1/3
DistanceMatrix(dna, method="shortest",
              includeTerminalGaps=TRUE,
              penalizeGapLetterMatches=TRUE) # 2/4
DistanceMatrix(dna, method="shortest",
              includeTerminalGaps=TRUE) # 1/3
DistanceMatrix(dna, method="longest",
              includeTerminalGaps=FALSE) # 1/3
DistanceMatrix(dna, method="longest",
              includeTerminalGaps=TRUE,
              penalizeGapLetterMatches=TRUE) # 3/5
DistanceMatrix(dna, method="longest",
              includeTerminalGaps=TRUE) # 1/3
DistanceMatrix(dna, method="overlap",
              minCoverage=1) # NA (insufficient overlap)
DistanceMatrix(dna, method="overlap",
              minCoverage=0.75) # 3/4 sites covered in shorter
DistanceMatrix(dna, method="overlap",

```

```

        minCoverage=-0.75) # 3/5 sites covered in longer

# neither internal nor external gap/gap matches are considered
dna <- DNASTringSet(c("--A-CTA", "-AG-C--"))
dna
DistanceMatrix(dna) # 1/2
DistanceMatrix(dna,
               includeTerminalGaps=TRUE,
               penalizeGapLetterMatches=TRUE) # 4/5
DistanceMatrix(dna,
               includeTerminalGaps=TRUE,
               penalizeGapLetterMatches=TRUE,
               method="shortest") # 2/3
DistanceMatrix(dna,
               includeTerminalGaps=TRUE,
               penalizeGapLetterMatches=TRUE,
               method="longest") # 3/4

# examples using real sequences
fas <- system.file("extdata", "50S_ribosomal_protein_L2.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNASTringSet(fas)
ali <- AlignTranslation(dna, type="both", verbose=FALSE)
DNA <- ali[[1L]]
AA <- ali[[2L]]

# Hamming distances with different gap penalties
d_NT_noGap <- DistanceMatrix(DNA, type="dist") # penalizeGapLetter=FALSE
d_NT_allGap <- DistanceMatrix(DNA, type="dist", penalizeGapLetter=TRUE)
d_NT_oneGap <- DistanceMatrix(DNA, type="dist", penalizeGapLetter=NA)
pairs(data.frame(d_NT_noGap, d_NT_allGap, d_NT_oneGap), pch=46, col="#0000011")

# correcting distances for multiple substitutions per site
Q <- 1 - diag(4)
rownames(Q) <- colnames(Q) <- DNA_BASES
freqs <- setNames(rep(0.25, 4), DNA_BASES)
d_NT_JC <- DistanceMatrix(DNA, type="dist", correction="JC")
d_NT_even <- DistanceMatrix(DNA, type="dist", substitutionMatrix=Q, frequencies=freqs)
pairs(data.frame(d_NT_noGap, d_NT_JC, d_NT_even), pch=46, col="#0000011")

# specifying a rate matrix with uneven transition/transversion rates
Q["C", "T"] <- Q["T", "C"] <- Q["A", "G"] <- Q["G", "A"] <- 2
d_NT_uneven <- DistanceMatrix(DNA, type="dist", substitutionMatrix=Q, frequencies=freqs)
pairs(data.frame(d_NT_noGap, d_NT_uneven, d_NT_even), pch=46, col="#0000011")

# comparing amino acid and nucleotide distances
d_AA_noGap <- DistanceMatrix(AA, type="dist") # penalizeGapLetter=FALSE
d_AA_WAG <- DistanceMatrix(AA, type="dist", correction="WAG")
pairs(data.frame(d_NT_noGap, d_AA_noGap, d_AA_WAG), pch=46, col="#0000011")

# using a model with letter frequencies derived from the input sequences
d_NT_F81_F <- DistanceMatrix(DNA, type="dist", correction="F81+F")
d_AA_WAG_F <- DistanceMatrix(AA, type="dist", correction="WAG+F")
pairs(data.frame(d_NT_F81_F, d_AA_WAG, d_AA_WAG_F), pch=46, col="#0000011")

```

```
# choosing a model with different transition/transversion rates
d_NT_K80 <- DistanceMatrix(DNA, type="dist", correction="K80")
d_NT_TN93_F <- DistanceMatrix(DNA, type="dist", correction="TN93+F")
pairs(data.frame(d_NT_F81_F, d_NT_K80, d_NT_TN93_F), pch=46, col="#0000011")

# incorporating the indel component of distance
d_NT_JC_indel <- DistanceMatrix(DNA, type="dist", correction="JC", penalize=TRUE)
d_NT_JC_indelblock <- DistanceMatrix(DNA, type="dist", correction="JC", penalize=NA)
pairs(data.frame(d_NT_JC, d_NT_JC_indel, d_NT_JC_indelblock), pch=46, col="#0000011")

# specifying a substitutionMatrix (without frequencies)
d_AA_BLOSUM <- DistanceMatrix(AA, type="dist", substitutionMatrix="BLOSUM62")
d_AA_PFASUM <- DistanceMatrix(AA, type="dist", substitutionMatrix="PFASUM50")
pairs(data.frame(d_AA_WAG, d_AA_BLOSUM, d_AA_PFASUM), pch=46, col="#0000011")
```

---

ExtractGenes

*Extract Predicted Genes from a Genome*

---

## Description

Extracts predicted genes from the genome used for prediction.

## Usage

```
ExtractGenes(x,
             myDNAStringSet,
             type = "DNAStringSet",
             ...)
```

## Arguments

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <code>x</code>              | An object of class Genes.  |
| <code>myDNAStringSet</code> | The DNAStringSet object used in generating <code>x</code> .  |
| <code>type</code>           | The class of sequences to return. This should be (an unambiguous abbreviation of) one of "AAStringSet", "DNAStringSet" (the default), or "RNAStringSet". |
| <code>...</code>            | Other parameters passed directly to translate.   |

## Details

Extracts a set of gene predictions as either DNA, mRNA, or proteins.

## Value

An "AAStringSet", "DNAStringSet", or "RNAStringSet" determined by `type`.

## Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**See Also**

[FindGenes](#), [Genes-class](#), [WriteGenes](#)

**Examples**

```
# import a test genome
fas <- system.file("extdata",
  "Chlamydia_trachomatis_NC_000117.fas.gz",
  package="DECIPHER")
genome <- readDNASTringSet(fas)

x <- FindGenes(genome)
genes <- ExtractGenes(x, genome)
proteins <- ExtractGenes(x, genome, type="AAStrngSet")
```

---

FindChimeras

*Find Chimeras in a Sequence Database*

---

**Description**

Finds chimeras present in a database of sequences. Makes use of a reference database of (presumed to be) good quality sequences.

**Usage**

```
FindChimeras(dbFile,
  tblName = "Seqs",
  identifier = "",
  dbFileReference,
  tblNameReference = "Seqs",
  batchSize = 100,
  minNumFragments = 20000,
  tb.width = 5,
  multiplier = 20,
  minLength = 30,
  minCoverage = 0.6,
  overlap = 100,
  minSuspectFragments = 4,
  showPercentCoverage = FALSE,
  add2tbl = FALSE,
  maxGroupSize = -1,
  minGroupSize = 25,
  excludeIDs = NULL,
  processors = 1,
  verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| dbFile              | A database connection object or a character string specifying the path to a SQLite database file to be checked for chimeric sequences.  |
| tblName             | Character string specifying the table in which to check for chimeras.   |
| identifier          | Optional character string used to narrow the search results to those matching a specific identifier. If "" then all identifiers are selected.   |
| dbFileReference     | A database connection object or a character string specifying the path to a SQLite reference database file of (presumed to be) good quality sequences. A 16S reference database is available from <a href="http://DECIPHER.codes">http://DECIPHER.codes</a> . |
| tblNameReference    | Character string specifying the table with reference sequences.   |
| batchSize           | Number sequences to tile with fragments at a time.  |
| minNumFragments     | Number of suspect fragments to accumulate before searching through other groups.  |
| tb.width            | A single integer [1..14] giving the number of nucleotides at the start of each fragment that are part of the trusted band.  |
| multiplier          | A single integer specifying the multiple of fragments found out-of-group greater than fragments found in-group in order to consider a sequence a chimera.   |
| minLength           | Minimum length of a chimeric region in order to be considered as a chimera.   |
| minCoverage         | Minimum fraction of coverage necessary in a chimeric region.  |
| overlap             | Number of nucleotides at the end of the sequence that the chimeric region must overlap in order to be considered a chimera.   |
| minSuspectFragments | Minimum number of suspect fragments belonging to another group required to consider a sequence a chimera.   |
| showPercentCoverage | Logical indicating whether to list the percent coverage of suspect fragments in each chimeric region in the output.   |
| add2tbl             | Logical or a character string specifying the table name in which to add the result.   |
| maxGroupSize        | Maximum number of sequences searched in a group. A value of less than 0 means the search is unlimited.  |
| minGroupSize        | The minimum number of sequences in a group to be considered as part of the search for chimeras. May need to be set to a small value for reference databases with mostly small groups.   |
| excludeIDs          | Optional character vector of identifier(s) to exclude from database searches, or NULL (the default) to not exclude any.   |
| processors          | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |
| verbose             | Logical indicating whether to display progress.   |

## Details

FindChimeras works by finding suspect fragments that are uncommon in the group where the sequence belongs, but very common in another group where the sequence does not belong. Each sequence in the dbFile is tiled into short sequence segments called fragments. If the fragments are infrequent in their respective group in the dbFileReference then they are considered suspect. If enough suspect fragments from a sequence meet the specified constraints then the sequence is flagged as a chimera.

The default parameters are optimized for full-length 16S sequences (> 1,000 nucleotides). Shorter 16S sequences require two parameters that are different than the defaults: `minCoverage = 0.2`, and `minSuspectFragments = 2`.

Groups are determined by the identifier present in each database. For this reason, the groups in the dbFile should exist in the groups of the dbFileReference. The reference database is assumed to contain many sequences of only good quality.

If a reference database is not present then it is feasible to create a reference database by using the input database as the reference database. Removing chimeras from the reference database and then iteratively repeating the process can result in a clean reference database.

For non-16S sequences it may be necessary to optimize the parameters for the particular sequences. The simplest way to perform an optimization is to experiment with different input parameters on artificial chimeras such as those created using [CreateChimeras](#). Adjusting input parameters until the maximum number of artificial chimeras are identified is the easiest way to determine new defaults.

## Value

A data.frame containing only the sequences that meet the specifications for being chimeric. The chimera column contains information on the chimeric region and to which group it belongs. The row.names of the data.frame correspond to those of the sequences in the dbFile.

## Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

## References

ES Wright et al. (2012) "DECIPHER: A Search-Based Approach to Chimera Identification for 16S rRNA Sequences." *Applied and Environmental Microbiology*, doi:10.1128/AEM.06516-11.

## See Also

[CreateChimeras](#), [Add2DB](#)

## Examples

```
if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {
  db <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.sqlite", package="DECIPHER")
  # It is necessary to set dbFileReference to the file path of the
  # 16S reference database available from http://DECIPHER.codes
  chimeras <- FindChimeras(db, dbFileReference=db)
}
```

FindGenes

*Find Genes in a Genome***Description**

Predicts the start and stop positions of protein coding genes in a genome.

**Usage**

```
FindGenes(myDNAStringSet,
          geneticCode = getGeneticCode("11"),
          minGeneLength = 60,
          includeGenes = NULL,
          allowEdges = TRUE,
          allScores = FALSE,
          showPlot = FALSE,
          processors = 1,
          verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <code>myDNAStringSet</code> | A <code>DNAStringSet</code> object of unaligned sequences representing a genome.   |
| <code>geneticCode</code>    | A named character vector defining the translation from codons to amino acids. Optionally, an <code>"alt_init_codons"</code> attribute can be used to specify alternative initiation codons. By default, the bacterial and archaeal genetic code is used, which has seven possible initiation codons: ATG, GTG, TTG, CTG, ATA, ATT, and ATC.                                |
| <code>minGeneLength</code>  | Integer specifying the minimum length of genes to find in the genome.  |
| <code>includeGenes</code>   | A <code>Genes</code> object to include as potential genes or <code>NULL</code> (the default) to predict all genes de novo.   |
| <code>allowEdges</code>     | Logical determining whether to allow genes that run off the edge of the sequences. If <code>TRUE</code> (the default), genes can be identified with implied starts or ends outside the boundaries of <code>myDNAStringSet</code> , although the boundary will be set to the last possible codon position. This is useful when genome sequences are circular or incomplete. |
| <code>allScores</code>      | Logical indicating whether to return information about all possible open reading frames or only the predicted genes (the default).   |
| <code>showPlot</code>       | Logical determining whether a plot is displayed with the distribution of gene lengths and scores. (See details section below.)   |
| <code>processors</code>     | The number of processors to use, or <code>NULL</code> to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |
| <code>verbose</code>        | Logical indicating whether to print information about the predictions on each iteration. (See details section below.)  |



## Details

Protein coding genes are identified by learning their characteristic signature directly from the genome, i.e., *ab initio* prediction. Gene signatures are derived from the content of the open reading frame and surrounding signals that indicate the presence of a gene. Genes are assumed to not contain introns or frame shifts, making the function best suited for prokaryotic genomes.

If `showPlot` is TRUE then a plot is displayed with four panels. The upper left panel shows the fitted distribution of background open reading frame lengths. The upper right panel shows this distribution on top of the fitted distribution of predicted gene lengths. The lower left panel shows the fitted distribution of scores for the intergenic spacing between genes on the same and opposite genome strands. The bottom right panel shows the total score of open reading frames and predicted genes by length.

If `verbose` is TRUE, information is shown about the predictions at each iteration of gene finding. The mean score difference between genes and non-genes is updated at each iteration, unless it is negative, in which case the score is dropped and a "-" is displayed. The columns denote the number of iterations ("Iter"), number of codon scoring models ("Models"), start codon scores ("Start"), upstream k-mer motif scores ("Motif"), mRNA folding scores ("Fold"), initial codon bias scores ("Init"), upstream nucleotide bias scores ("UpsNt"), termination codon bias scores ("Term"), ribosome binding site scores ("RBS"), codon autocorrelation scores ("Auto"), stop codon scores ("Stop"), and number of predicted genes ("Genes").

## Value

An object of class Genes.

## Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

## See Also

[ExtractGenes](#), [FindNonCoding](#), [Genes-class](#), [WriteGenes](#)

## Examples

```
# import a test genome
fas <- system.file("extdata",
  "Chlamydia_trachomatis_NC_000117.fas.gz",
  package="DECIPHER")
genome <- readDNAStringSet(fas)

z <- FindGenes(genome)
z
genes <- ExtractGenes(z, genome)
genes
proteins <- ExtractGenes(z, genome, type="AAStringSet")
proteins
```

---

FindNonCoding

*Find Non-Coding RNAs in a Genome*

---

### Description

Searches for conserved patterns representing a family of non-coding RNAs. Returns the start and end boundaries of potential matches along with their log-odds score.

### Usage

```
FindNonCoding(x,  
              myXStringSet,  
              minScore = 16,  
              allScores = FALSE,  
              processors = 1,  
              verbose = TRUE)
```

### Arguments

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| x            | A NonCoding object or a list of NonCoding objects for searching.  |
| myXStringSet | A DNASTringSet or RNASTringSet object of unaligned sequences, typically representing a genome.  |
| minScore     | Numeric giving the minimum log-odds score of matches to x in myXStringSet to report, or a vector of numerics specifying the minimum score per NonCoding object in x. The maximum false discovery rate is approximately $\exp(-\text{minScore})$ per nucleotide per object in x. |
| allScores    | Logical specifying whether all matches should be returned (TRUE) or only the top matches when there are multiple matches in the same region.  |
| processors   | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |
| verbose      | Logical indicating whether to display progress.   |

### Details

Non-coding RNAs are identified by the location of representative sequence patterns relative to the beginning and end of the non-coding RNA. Potential matches to each NonCoding object in x are scored based on their log-odds relative to a background that is derived from the input sequence (myXStringSet). Matches of at least minScore are returned as a Genes object with the "Gene" column set to the negative index of the list element of x that was identified.

### Value

An object of class Genes.

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

## References

Wright, E. S. (2021). FindNonCoding: rapid and simple detection of non-coding RNAs in genomes. *Bioinformatics*. <https://doi.org/10.1093/bioinformatics/btab708>

## See Also

[LearnNonCoding](#), [NonCoding-class](#), [ExtractGenes](#), [Genes-class](#), [WriteGenes](#)

## Examples

```
data(NonCodingRNA_Bacteria)
x <- NonCodingRNA_Bacteria
names(x)

# import a test genome
fas <- system.file("extdata",
  "Chlamydia_trachomatis_NC_000117.fas.gz",
  package="DECIPHER")
genome <- readDNASTringSet(fas)

z <- FindNonCoding(x, genome)
z

annotations <- attr(z, "annotations")
m <- match(z[, "Gene"], annotations)
sort(table(names(annotations)[m]))

genes <- ExtractGenes(z, genome, type="RNASTringSet")
genes
```

---

FindSynteny

*Finds Synteny in a Sequence Database*

---

## Description

Finds syntenic blocks between groups of sequences in a database.

## Usage

```
FindSynteny(dbFile,
  tblName = "Seqs",
  identifier = "",
  useFrames = TRUE,
  alphabet = AA_REDUCED[[172]],
  geneticCode = GENETIC_CODE,
  sepCost = -2,
  sepPower = 0.5,
  gapCost = -10,
```

```

gapPower = 0.5,
shiftCost = 0,
codingCost = 0,
maxSep = 200,
maxGap = 20,
minScore = 100,
N = 10,
dropScore = -5,
maskRepeats = TRUE,
maskLCRs = TRUE,
allowOverlap = FALSE,
storage = 0.5,
processors = 1,
verbose = TRUE)

```

### Arguments

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| dbFile      | A database connection object or a character string specifying the path to a SQLite database file. The database should contain DNA sequences, typically with a distinct identifier for sequences belonging to each genome or chromosome.   |
| tblName     | Character string specifying the table where the sequences are located.  |
| identifier  | Optional character string used to narrow the search results to those matching a specific identifier. If "" then all identifiers are selected. Repeated identifiers will find synteny between a sequence and itself, while blocking identical positions from matching in both sequences. |
| useFrames   | Logical specifying whether to use 6-frame amino acid translations to help find more distant hits. Using the alphabet is helpful when the genome is largely composed of coding DNA. If FALSE then faster but less sensitive to distant homology.   |
| alphabet    | Character vector of amino acid groupings used to reduce the 20 standard amino acids into smaller groups. Alphabet reduction helps to find more distant homologies between sequences. A non-reduced amino acid alphabet can be used by setting alphabet equal to AA_STANDARD.            |
| geneticCode | Either a character vector giving the genetic code to use in translation, or a list containing one genetic code for each identifier. If a list is provided then it must be named by the corresponding identifiers in the database.   |
| sepCost     | Cost per nucleotide separation between hits to apply when chaining hits into blocks.  |
| sepPower    | Positive numeric specifying the power applied to the separation between hits before multiplying by sepCost.   |
| gapCost     | Cost for gaps between hits to apply when chaining hits into blocks.   |
| gapPower    | Positive numeric specifying the power applied to the number of gaps between hits before multiplying by gapCost.   |
| shiftCost   | Cost for shifting between different reading frames when chaining reduced amino acid hits into blocks.   |

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| codingCost   | Cost for switching between coding and non-coding hits when chaining hits into blocks.  |
| maxSep       | Maximal separation (in nucleotides) between hits in the same block.  |
| maxGap       | The maximum number of gaps between hits in the same block.   |
| minScore     | The minimum score required for a chain of hits to become a block. Higher values of minScore are less likely to yield false positives.  |
| N            | Numeric indicating the approximate number of k-mers that can be randomly selected before one is found by chance on average. For example, the default value of 10 will set k-mer length such that every 10th k-mer is expected to have a match by chance.   |
| dropScore    | The change from maximal score required to stop extending blocks.   |
| maskRepeats  | Logical specifying whether to mask repeats when searching for hits.  |
| maskLCRs     | Logical indicating whether to mask low complexity regions when searching for hits.   |
| allowOverlap | Logical specifying whether to permit blocks to overlap on the same sequence.   |
| storage      | Excess gigabytes available to store objects so that they do not need to be re-computed in later steps. This should be a number between zero and a (modest) fraction of the available system memory. Note that more than storage gigabytes may be required, but will not be stored for later reuse. |
| processors   | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.   |
| verbose      | Logical indicating whether to display progress.  |

### Details

Long nucleotide sequences, such as genomes, are often not collinear or may be composed of many smaller segments (e.g., contigs). FindSynteny searches for “hits” between sequences that can be chained into collinear “blocks” of synteny. Hits are defined as k-mer exact nucleotide matches or k-mer matches in a reduced amino acid alphabet (if useFrames is TRUE). Hits are chained into blocks as long as they are: (1) within the same sequence, (2) within maxSep and maxGap distance, and (3) help maintain the score above minScore. Blocks are extended from their first and last hit until their score drops below dropScore from the maximum that was reached. This process results in a set of hits and blocks stored in an object of class “Synteny”.

### Value

An object of class “Synteny”.

### Note

FindSynteny is intended to be used on sets of sequences with up to ~200 million nucleotides total per identifier. For this reason, better performance can sometimes be achieved by assigning a unique identifier to each chromosome belonging to a large genome.

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**See Also**

[AlignSynteny](#), [Synteny-class](#)

**Examples**

```
if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {
  db <- system.file("extdata", "Influenza.sqlite", package="DECIPHER")
  synteny <- FindSynteny(db)
  synteny
  pairs(synteny) # scatterplot matrix
}
```

---

 FormGroups

*Forms Groups By Rank*


---

**Description**

Agglomerates sequences into groups within a specified size range based on taxonomic rank.

**Usage**

```
FormGroups(dbFile,
           tblName = "Seqs",
           goalSize = 50,
           minGroupSize = 25,
           maxGroupSize = 5000,
           includeNames = FALSE,
           add2tbl = FALSE,
           verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| dbFile       | A database connection object or a character string specifying the path to a SQLite database file.         |
| tblName      | Character string specifying the table where the taxonomic rank (i.e., “organism”) information is located. |
| goalSize     | Number of sequences required in each group to stop adding more sequences.                                 |
| minGroupSize | Minimum number of sequences in each group required to stop trying to recombine with a larger group.       |
| maxGroupSize | Maximum number of sequences in each group allowed to continue agglomeration.                              |
| includeNames | Logical indicating whether to include the formal scientific name in the group name.                       |
| add2tbl      | Logical or a character string specifying the table name in which to add the result.                       |
| verbose      | Logical indicating whether to display progress.   |

## Details

FormGroups uses the “organism” field in the dbFile table to group sequences with similar taxonomic rank. Taxonomic rank information must be present in the tblName, such as that created by default when importing sequences from a GenBank formatted file.

Organism information contains the formal scientific name on the first line, followed by the taxonomic lineage on subsequent lines. When includeNames is TRUE the formal scientific name is appended to the end of the group name, otherwise only the taxonomic lineage is used as the group name.

The algorithm ascends the taxonomic tree, agglomerating taxa into groups until the goalSize is reached. If the group size is below minGroupSize then further agglomeration is attempted with a larger group. If additional agglomeration results in a group larger than maxGroupSize then the agglomeration is undone so that the group is smaller. Setting minGroupSize to goalSize avoids the creation of polyphyletic groups. Note that this approach may often result in paraphyletic groups.

## Value

A data.frame with the organism and corresponding group name as identifier. Note that quotes are stripped from group names to prevent problems that they may cause. The origin gives the organism preceding the identifier. The count denotes number of sequences corresponding to each organism. If add2tbl is not FALSE then the “identifier” and “origin” columns are updated in dbFile.

## Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

## See Also

[IdentifyByRank](#)

## Examples

```
if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {  
  db <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.sqlite", package="DECIPHER")  
  g <- FormGroups(db, goalSize=10, minGroupSize=5, maxGroupSize=20)  
  head(g)  
  tapply(g$count, g$identifier, sum)  
}
```

## Description

Gene prediction consist of delimiting the boundaries of regions that function as genes within a genome. Class Genes provides objects and functions for storing the boundaries of genes and associated information resulting from gene prediction.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'Genes'
plot(x,
      xlim = c(1, 1e4),
      ylim = c(-100, 500),
      interact = FALSE,
      colorBy="Strand",
      colorRamp=colorRampPalette(c("darkblue", "darkred")),
      colorGenes="green4",
      ...)

## S3 method for class 'Genes'
print(x, ...)

## S3 method for class 'Genes'
x[i, j, ...]
```

**Arguments**

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| x          | An object of class Genes.  |
| xlim       | Numeric vector of length 2 specifying the x-axis limits for plotting.  |
| ylim       | Numeric vector of length 2 specifying the y-axis limits for plotting.  |
| interact   | Logical determining whether the plot is interactive. If TRUE, clicking the plot on the right or left side will scroll one frame in that direction. To end interaction, either right-click, press the escape key, or press the stop button depending on the graphics device in use. |
| colorBy    | Character string indicating the name of the column in x that should be used for coloring. Unambiguous abbreviations are also permitted.  |
| colorRamp  | A function that will return n colors when given a number n. Examples are rainbow, heat.colors, terrain.colors, cm.colors, or (the default) colorRampPalette.   |
| colorGenes | Character string specifying the color of genes, or NA to color genes according to colorBy.   |
| i          | Numeric or character vector of row indices to extract from x.  |
| j          | Numeric or character vector of column indices to extract from x. If j is missing, all columns are included and the returned object will also belong to class Genes.  |
| ...        | Other optional parameters.   |

**Details**

Objects of class Genes are stored as numeric matrices containing information pertaining to gene predictions. The matrix columns include the index ("Index") of the corresponding sequence in the original genome, the strand ("Strand") where the gene is located (either "+" (0) or "-" (1), the beginning ("Begin") and ending ("End") positions of the gene, scores acquired during prediction, and whether (!= 0) or not (0) the region was predicted to be a gene. Note that the start of the gene is at the beginning position when the strand is "+" and end when the strand is "-". By convention,



rows with negative values in the "Gene" column represent non-coding RNAs and rows with positive values represent protein coding genes.

The `plot` method will show the total score of each prediction along the genome. This is most useful when displaying the result of setting `allScores` to `TRUE` in `FindGenes`. Here, possible genes on either strand will be shown (by default), with the predicted genes highlighted. The beginning (solid) and ending (dashed) positions are denoted by vertical lines. Note that the x-axis is cumulative genome position, and changes between genome sequences indices are demarcated by dashed vertical lines.

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### See Also

[ExtractGenes](#), [FindGenes](#), [WriteGenes](#)

### Examples

```
# import a test genome
fas <- system.file("extdata",
  "Chlamydia_trachomatis_NC_000117.fas.gz",
  package="DECIPHER")
genome <- readDNAStrngSet(fas)

x <- FindGenes(genome, allScores=TRUE)
x
head(unclass(x)) # the underlying structure

plot(x) # default coloring by "Strand"
# color by RBS score (blue is weak/low, red is strong/high)
plot(x, colorBy="RibosomeBindingSiteScore", colorGenes=NA)
# color by fraction of times a gene was chosen
plot(x, colorBy="FractionReps", colorGenes=NA)
# color by which codon model was selected for each ORF
plot(x, colorBy="CodonModel", xlim=c(1, 3e4))

# example of splitting a Genes object by "Strand"
tapply(seq_len(nrow(x)), x[, "Strand"], function(i) x[i])
```

### Description

Arrays containing values of mutual information for single residues (HEC\_MI1) and pairs of residues (HEC\_MI2) located within 10 residues of the position being predicted (position "0"). The arrays have dimensions corresponding to the 20 (standard) amino acids, positions (-10 to 10), and states (helix ("H"), sheet ("E"), or coil ("C")).

**Usage**

```
data("HEC_MI1")
data("HEC_MI2")
```

**Format**

The format of HEC\_MI1 is: num [1:20, 1:21, 1:3] 0.04264 -0.00117 0.02641 0.08264 -0.04876 ... - attr(\*, "dimnames")=List of 3 ..\$ : chr [1:20] "A" "R" "N" "D" ... ..\$ : chr [1:21] "-10" "-9" "-8" "-7" ... ..\$ : chr [1:3] "H" "E" "C"

The format of HEC\_MI2 is: num [1:20, 1:20, 1:21, 1:21, 1:3] 2.56 -Inf -Inf -Inf -Inf ... - attr(\*, "dimnames")=List of 5 ..\$ : chr [1:20] "A" "R" "N" "D" ... ..\$ : chr [1:20] "A" "R" "N" "D" ... ..\$ : chr [1:21] "-10" "-9" "-8" "-7" ... ..\$ : chr [1:21] "-10" "-9" "-8" "-7" ... ..\$ : chr [1:3] "H" "E" "C"

**Details**

The values in each matrix were derived based on a set of 15,201 proteins in the ASTRAL Compendium (Chandonia, 2004). The 8-states assigned by the Dictionary of Protein Secondary Structure (DSSP) were reduced to 3-states via H = G, H, or I; E = E; and C = B, S, C, or T.

**References**

Chandonia, J. M. (2004). The ASTRAL Compendium in 2004. *Nucleic Acids Research*, **32(90001)**, 189D-192. doi:10.1093/nar/gkh034.

**Examples**

```
data(HEC_MI1)
# the contribution of an arginine ("R")
# located 3 residues left of center
# to a helical ("H") state at the center
HEC_MI1["R", "-3", "H"]

data(HEC_MI2)
# the contribution of arginine and lysine ("K")
# located at positions -1 and +1, respectively
# to a coil ("C") state at the center position
HEC_MI2["R", "K", "-1", "1", "C"]

matplot(-10:10, t(HEC_MI1[, , "H"]),
        type="l", col=1:8, lty=rep(1:3, each=8),
        xlab="Amino Acid Position Relative to Center",
        ylab="Log-Odds of Helix at Center Position")
legend("bottomleft",
       lwd=1, col=1:8, lty=rep(1:3, each=8),
       legend=dimnames(HEC_MI1)[[1]], ncol=2)
```

---

IdConsensus

*Create Consensus Sequences by Groups*

---

### Description

Forms a consensus sequence representing the sequences in each group.

### Usage

```
IdConsensus(dbFile,  
            tblName = "Seqs",  
            identifier = "",  
            type = "DNAStringSet",  
            colName = "identifier",  
            processors = 1,  
            verbose = TRUE,  
            ...)
```

### Arguments

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| dbFile     | A database connection object or a character string specifying the path to a SQLite database file.  |
| tblName    | Character string specifying the table in which to form consensus.  |
| identifier | Optional character string used to narrow the search results to those matching a specific identifier. If "" then all identifiers are selected.                              |
| type       | The type of XStringSet (sequences) to use in forming consensus. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "DNAStringSet", "RNAStringSet", "AAStringSet", or "BStringSet". |
| colName    | Column containing the group name of each sequence.   |
| processors | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.   |
| verbose    | Logical indicating whether to display progress.  |
| ...        | Additional arguments to be passed directly to <a href="#">ConsensusSequence</a> for an AAStringSet, DNAStringSet, or RNAStringSet, or to consensusString for a BStringSet. |

### Details

Creates a consensus sequence for each of the distinct groups defined in colName. The resulting XStringSet contains as many consensus sequences as there are distinct groups in colName. For example, it is possible to create a set of consensus sequences with one consensus sequence for each "id" in the tblName.

### Value

An XStringSet object containing the consensus sequence for each group. The names of the XStringSet contain the number of sequences and name of each group.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**See Also**

[Seqs2DB](#)

**Examples**

```
if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {
  db <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.sqlite", package="DECIPHER")
  con <- IdConsensus(db, colName="identifier", noConsensusChar="N")
  BrowseSeqs(con)
}
```

---

IdentifyByRank

*Identify By Taxonomic Rank*

---

**Description**

Identifies sequences by a specific level of their taxonomic rank.

**Usage**

```
IdentifyByRank(dbFile,
               tblName = "Seqs",
               level = 0,
               add2tbl = FALSE,
               verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| dbFile  | A database connection object or a character string specifying the path to a SQLite database file.         |
| tblName | Character string specifying the table where the taxonomic rank (i.e., “organism”) information is located. |
| level   | Level of the taxonomic rank. (See details section below.)   |
| add2tbl | Logical or a character string specifying the table name in which to add the result.                       |
| verbose | Logical indicating whether to print database queries and other information.                               |

## Details

IdentifyByRank simply identifies a sequence by a specific level of its taxonomic rank. Requires that organism information be present in the `tblName`, such as that created by default when importing sequences from a GenBank formatted file.

The input parameter `level` should be an integer giving the “level” of the taxonomic rank to choose as the identifier. Negative levels are interpreted as being that many levels from the last level in each rank. The `level` zero selects the base level (see below).

If the specified level of rank does not exist then the closest rank is chosen. Therefore, setting `level` to `Inf` will always select the last taxonomic level (i.e., genus).

For example, a representative “organism” imported from a GenBank file is:

```
Saccharomyces cerevisiae
Eukaryota; Fungi; Ascomycota; Saccharomycotina; Saccharomycetes;
Saccharomycetales; Saccharomycetaceae; Saccharomyces.
```

Setting `level` to 0 would result in an identifier of “Saccharomyces cerevisiae”, because it is on the first line. A level of 2 would return “Fungi”, and -2 (second to last) would return “Saccharomycetaceae”. A level of `Inf` would find the nearest level to the end, “Saccharomyces”.

## Value

A `data.frame` with the `organism` and corresponding identifier as `identifier`. Note that quotes are stripped from identifiers to prevent problems that they may cause. The `origin` gives the organism preceding the identifier. If `add2tbl` is not `FALSE` then the “identifier” column is updated in `dbFile`.

## Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

## See Also

[FormGroups](#)

## Examples

```
if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {
  db <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.sqlite", package="DECIPHER")
  ids <- IdentifyByRank(db, level=Inf)
  head(ids)
}
```

---

 IdLengths

*Determine the Number of Characters in Each Sequence*


---

**Description**

Counts the number of standard and non-standard characters in each sequence.

**Usage**

```
IdLengths(dbFile,
          tblName = "Seqs",
          type = "DNAStringSet",
          add2tbl = FALSE,
          batchSize = 10000,
          processors = 1,
          verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| dbFile     | A database connection object or a character string specifying the path to a SQLite database file.                                    |
| tblName    | Character string specifying the table where the sequences are located.   |
| type       | The type of XStringSet being processed. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "AAStringSet", "DNAStringSet", or "RNAStringSet". |
| add2tbl    | Logical or a character string specifying the table name in which to add the result.  |
| batchSize  | Integer specifying the number of sequences to process at a time.   |
| processors | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.                                   |
| verbose    | Logical indicating whether to display progress.  |

**Details**

IdLengths is designed to efficiently determine the number of standard and non-standard characters in every sequence within a database. Standard and non-standard characters are defined with respect to the type of the sequences. For DNA and RNA sequences there are four standard characters and 11 non-standard characters (i.e., ambiguity codes). For amino acid sequences there are 20 standard and seven non-standard characters (including stops). Gap ("-"), missing (":"), and mask ("+") characters count toward the width but not the number of standard or non-standard characters.

**Value**

A data.frame with the number of standard characters, nonstandard characters, and width of each sequence. The row.names of the data.frame correspond to the "row\_names" in the tblName of the dbFile.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**References**

ES Wright (2016) "Using DECIPHER v2.0 to Analyze Big Biological Sequence Data in R". The R Journal, **8(1)**, 352-359.

**See Also**

[Add2DB](#)

**Examples**

```
if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {  
  db <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.sqlite", package="DECIPHER")  
  l <- IdLengths(db)  
  head(l)  
}
```

---

IdTaxa

*Assign Sequences a Taxonomic Classification*

---

**Description**

Classifies sequences according to a training set by assigning a confidence to taxonomic labels for each taxonomic level.

**Usage**

```
IdTaxa(test,  
        trainingSet,  
        type = "extended",  
        strand = "both",  
        threshold = 60,  
        bootstraps = 100,  
        samples = L^0.47,  
        minDescend = 0.98,  
        fullLength = 0,  
        processors = 1,  
        verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| test        | An AAStringSet, DNAStringSet, or RNAStringSet of unaligned sequences.   |
| trainingSet | An object of class Taxa and subclass Train compatible with the class of test.   |
| type        | Character string indicating the type of output desired. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "extended" or "collapsed". (See value section below.)  |
| strand      | Character string indicating the orientation of the test sequences relative to the trainingSet. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "both", "top", or "bottom". The top strand is defined as the input test sequences being in the same orientation as the trainingSet, and the bottom strand is its reverse complement orientation. The default of "both" will classify using both orientations and choose the result with highest confidence. Choosing the correct strand will make classification over 2-fold faster, assuming that all of the reads are in the same orientation. Note that strand is ignored when test is an AAStringSet.   |
| threshold   | Numeric specifying the confidence at which to truncate the output taxonomic classifications. Lower values of threshold will classify deeper into the taxonomic tree at the expense of accuracy, and vice versa for higher values of threshold.  |
| bootstraps  | Integer giving the maximum number of bootstrap replicates to perform for each sequence. The number of bootstrap replicates is set automatically such that (on average) 99% of k-mers are sampled in each test sequence.   |
| samples     | A function or call written as a function of 'L', which will evaluate to a numeric vector the same length as 'L'. Typically of the form "A + B*L^C", where 'A', 'B', and 'C' are constants.  |
| minDescend  | Numeric giving the minimum fraction of bootstraps required to descend the tree during the initial tree descend phase of the algorithm. Higher values are less likely to descend the tree, causing direct comparison against more sequences in the trainingSet. Lower values may increase classification speed at the expense of accuracy. Suggested values are between 1.0 and 0.9.   |
| fullLength  | Numeric specifying the fold-difference in sequence lengths between sequences in test and trainingSet that is allowable, or 0 (the default) to consider all sequences in trainingSet regardless of length. Can be specified as either a single numeric (> 1), or two numerics specifying the upper and lower fold-difference. If fullLength is between 0 and 1 (exclusive), the fold-difference is inferred from the length variability among sequences belonging to each class based on the foldDifference quantiles. For example, setting fullLength to 0.99 would use the 1st and 99th percentile of intra-group length variability from the trainingSet. In the case of full-length sequences, specifying fullLength can improve both speed and accuracy by using sequence length as a pre-filter to classification. Note that fullLength should only be greater than 0 when both the test and trainingSet consist of full-length sequences. |
| processors  | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |
| verbose     | Logical indicating whether to display progress.   |



## Details

Sequences in test are each assigned a taxonomic classification based on the trainingSet created with [LearnTaxa](#). Each taxonomic level is given a confidence between 0% and 100%, and the taxonomy is truncated where confidence drops below threshold. If the taxonomic classification was truncated, the last group is labeled with “unclassified\_” followed by the final taxon’s name. Note that the reported confidence is not a p-value but does directly relate to a given classification’s probability of being wrong. The default threshold of 60% is intended to minimize the rate of incorrect classifications. Lower values of threshold (e.g., 50%) may be preferred to increase the taxonomic depth of classifications. Values of 60% or 50% are recommended for nucleotide sequences and 50% or 40% for amino acid sequences.

## Value

If type is “extended” (the default) then an object of class Taxa and subclass Train is returned. This is stored as a list with elements corresponding to their respective sequence in test. Each list element contains components:

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| taxon      | A character vector containing the taxa to which the sequence was assigned.                                    |
| confidence | A numeric vector giving the corresponding percent confidence for each taxon.                                  |
| rank       | If the classifier was trained with a set of ranks, a character vector containing the rank name of each taxon. |

If type is “collapsed” then a character vector is returned with the taxonomic assignment for each sequence. This takes the repeating form “Taxon name [rank, confidence%]; ...” if ranks were supplied during training, or “Taxon name [confidence%]; ...” otherwise.

## Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

## References

- Murali, A., et al. (2018). IDTAXA: a novel approach for accurate taxonomic classification of microbiome sequences. *Microbiome*, 6, 140. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s40168-018-0521-5>
- Cooley, N. and Wright, E. (2021). Accurate annotation of protein coding sequences with IDTAXA. *NAR Genomics and Bioinformatics*, 3(3). <https://doi.org/10.1093/nargab/lqab080>

## See Also

[LearnTaxa](#), [Taxa-class](#)

## Examples

```
data("TrainingSet_16S")

# import test sequences
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNAStringSet(fas)
```

```
# remove any gaps in the sequences
dna <- RemoveGaps(dna)

# classify the test sequences
ids <- IdTaxa(dna, TrainingSet_16S, strand="top")
ids

# view the results
plot(ids, TrainingSet_16S)
```

---

IndexSeqs

*Build an inverted index*


---

### Description

Builds an inverted index from a set of amino acid, DNA, or RNA sequences.

### Usage

```
IndexSeqs(subject,
           K,
           sensitivity,
           percentIdentity,
           patternLength,
           step = 1,
           alphabet = AA_REDUCED[[171]],
           maskRepeats = TRUE,
           maskLCRs = TRUE,
           maskNumerous = TRUE,
           batchSize = 1e+07,
           processors = 1,
           verbose = TRUE)
```

### Arguments

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| subject         | An AStringSet, DNASTringSet, or RNASTringSet object of target (unaligned) sequences to use as the subject of the search.  |
| K               | Integer providing the k-mer length. Typical values are 5 to 7 for amino acids (in the default alphabet) and 8 to 12 for nucleotides.  |
| sensitivity     | Numeric giving the goal search sensitivity, which is used in the absence of specifying K. Typically near, but always less than, 1.  |
| percentIdentity | Numeric identifying the goal percent identity for the given sensitivity, which is used in the absence of specifying K. Values closer to 100 allow for larger K and, thereby, faster searches. |
| patternLength   | Integer setting the expected (minimum) length of query sequences, which is used in the absence of specifying K.   |

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| step         | Integer determining the number of positions between the start of adjacent k-mers. Must be between 1 and K. Larger values reduce the memory required for the inverted index at the expense of search sensitivity.  |
| alphabet     | Character vector of amino acid groupings used to reduce the 20 standard amino acids into smaller groups. Alphabet reduction helps to find more distant homologies between protein sequences. A non-reduced amino acid alphabet can be used by setting alphabet equal to AA_STANDARD. Note that choice of alphabet affects the optimal value of K, with smaller alphabets requiring larger K and vice versa. |
| maskRepeats  | Logical specifying whether to mask repeats in the subject. (See details section below.)   |
| maskLCRs     | Logical indicating whether to mask low complexity regions in the subject. (See details section below.)  |
| maskNumerous | Logical indicating whether to mask frequent k-mers in the subject, or a positive numeric specifying the degree of masking to apply. (See details section below.)  |
| batchSize    | Integer defining the number of sequences to process in a batch. Smaller values reduce the function's memory footprint, potentially at the cost of increased runtime.  |
| processors   | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |
| verbose      | Logical indicating whether to display progress.   |

## Details

An `InvertedIndex` object functions much like a the index at the back of a book, except with the goal of finding homologous sequence regions. It primarily contains the locations of length K subsequences (i.e., k-mers) in subject. Only the set of unmasked k-mers separated every step positions are stored. In general, lower values of K and, especially, step are preferable for improving search sensitivity and specificity. If an appropriate value for K is unknown, it is possible to automatically calculate K by providing a goal search sensitivity for sequences of `patternLength` positions with a given `percentIdentity` to a target sequence. The fastest matching value of K will be automatically selected, or an error will be returned when the constraints cannot be met.

Masking repeats and low complexity regions helps to avoid spurious hits that are not related to sequence homology (i.e., common descent), while masking extremely frequent k-mers can improve search speed and decrease the size of the inverted index. If `maskRepeats` is TRUE (the default), masking is first applied to tandem repeats, while maintaining the first copy of the repeat. Next, if `maskLCRs` is TRUE (the default), any remaining low complexity regions are masked that are at least as long as the k-mer length (i.e., K). Finally, if `maskNumerous` is TRUE (the default), extremely frequent k-mers that remain are masked on a per sequence basis. It is also possible to control the degree of masking frequent k-mers by supplying a positive number for `maskNumerous`, representing the  $-\log(p\text{-value})$  of observing that many k-mers by chance. Giving larger positive values for `maskNumerous` will mask fewer k-mers.

Proper masking is critical to balance search speed and sensitivity. When mapping reads to a subject genome it is often best to leave `maskNumerous` as TRUE but set `maskRepeats` and `maskLCRs` to FALSE. This is because masking whole regions may preclude some reads from mapping, whereas masking the most frequent k-mers is sometimes necessary for speed. In contrast, when the subject

is a set of shorter sequences (e.g., proteins) there are rarely extremely frequent k-mers in a single sequence, so `maskNumerous` has less (or no) effect. In this case, keeping `maskRepeats` and `maskLCRs` as `TRUE` will prevent k-mer matches between sequences that are not related by common descent. This is because some biological mechanisms can generate similar sequence patterns in unrelated sequences, which would otherwise mislead the statistical model of homology based on the likelihood of shared k-mers.

### Value

An object of class `InvertedIndex`, which is stored as a list with components:

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>k</code>         | The input or automatically calculated value for K.                             |
| <code>step</code>      | The input value of step.   |
| <code>alphabet</code>  | Numbered letter groups present in the sequence alphabet.                       |
| <code>frequency</code> | Numeric frequencies of each letter grouping.                                   |
| <code>count</code>     | The number of times every possible (unmasked) k-mer was observed.              |
| <code>length</code>    | An integer giving the number of (unmasked) k-mers in each sequence in subject. |
| <code>location</code>  | The location of each k-mer within every sequence in subject, ordered by k-mer. |
| <code>index</code>     | The index of each k-mer within every sequence in subject, ordered by k-mer.    |

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### See Also

[SearchIndex](#), [AlignPairs](#)

### Examples

```
# import target sequences
fas <- system.file("extdata", "PlanctobacteriaNamedGenes.fas.gz", package="DECIPHER")
seqs <- readAAStringSet(fas)

# build an inverted index, specifying K
index <- IndexSeqs(seqs, K=6L)
index # K = 6

# alternatively, determine K automatically
index <- IndexSeqs(seqs, sensitivity=0.99, percentIdentity=60, patternLength=300)
index # K = 3
```

---

|               |                              |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| InvertedIndex | <i>InvertedIndex objects</i> |
|---------------|------------------------------|

---

## Description

InvertedIndex objects store k-mer locations and indexes in a set of sequences.

## Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'InvertedIndex'  
print(x,  
      ...)
```

## Arguments

|     |                                   |
|-----|-----------------------------------|
| x   | An object of class InvertedIndex. |
| ... | Other optional parameters.        |

## Details

Objects of class InvertedIndex are stored as a list. The function IndexSeqs returns an object of class InvertedIndex. The information stored in an InvertedIndex can be displayed with print.

## Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

## See Also

[IndexSeqs](#), [SearchIndex](#)

## Examples

```
# import target sequences  
fas <- system.file("extdata", "PlanctobacteriaNamedGenes.fas.gz", package="DECIPHER")  
seqs <- readAAStringSet(fas)  
  
# build an inverted index  
index <- IndexSeqs(seqs, K=6L)  
index # print the index
```

LearnNonCoding

*Learn a Non-Coding RNA Model***Description**

Learns a compact representation of patterns representing a set of non-coding RNAs belonging to the same family.

**Usage**

```
LearnNonCoding(myXStringSet,
               threshold = 0.3,
               weight = NA,
               maxLoopLength = 500,
               maxPatterns = 20,
               scoreDependence = FALSE,
               structure = NULL,
               processors = 1)
```

**Arguments**

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| myXStringSet    | A DNASTringSet or RNASTringSet object of aligned sequence representatives belonging to the same non-coding RNA family.  |
| threshold       | Numeric specifying the minimum relative frequency of patterns to consider during learning.  |
| weight          | Either a numeric vector of weights for each sequence, a single number implying equal weights, or NA (the default) to automatically calculate sequence weights based on myXStringSet.  |
| maxLoopLength   | Numeric giving the maximum length of conserved hairpin loops to consider.   |
| maxPatterns     | A numeric vector of length two specifying the maximum number of motifs and hairpins, respectively, or a single numeric giving the maximum for each.   |
| scoreDependence | Logical determining whether to record a log-odds score for dependencies between patterns. The default (FALSE) is recommended for most non-coding RNA families.  |
| structure       | Either a character string providing the consensus secondary structure in dot bracket notation, a matrix of paired positions in the first two columns, or NULL (the default) to predict the consensus secondary structure with PredictDBN. |
| processors      | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |

## Details

Non-coding RNAs belonging to the same family typically have conserved sequence motifs, secondary structure elements, and k-mer frequencies that can be used to identify members of the family. LearnNonCoding identifies these conserved patterns and determines which are best for identifying the non-coding RNA relative to a random sequence background. Sequence motifs and hairpins are defined relative to their distance from the start or end of the non-coding RNA, allowing the precise and rapid identification of the boundaries of any matches to the non-coding RNA in a genome.

## Value

An object of class NonCoding.

## Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

## References

Wright, E. S. (2021). FindNonCoding: rapid and simple detection of non-coding RNAs in genomes. *Bioinformatics*. <https://doi.org/10.1093/bioinformatics/btab708>

## See Also

[FindNonCoding](#), [NonCoding-class](#)

## Examples

```
# import a family of non-coding RNAs
fas_path <- system.file("extdata",
  "IhtA.fas",
  package="DECIPHER")
rna <- readRNAStringSet(fas_path)
rna

# align the sequences
RNA <- AlignSeqs(rna)
RNA

y <- LearnNonCoding(RNA)
y
y[["motifs"]]
y[["hairpins"]]
head(y[["kmers"]])
```

LearnTaxa

*Train a Classifier for Assigning Taxonomy***Description**

Trains a classifier based on a reference taxonomy containing sequence representatives assigned to taxonomic groups.

**Usage**

```
LearnTaxa(train,
          taxonomy,
          rank = NULL,
          K = NULL,
          N = 500,
          minFraction = 0.01,
          maxFraction = 0.06,
          maxIterations = 10,
          multiplier = 100,
          maxChildren = 200,
          alphabet = AA_REDUCED[[139]],
          verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>train</code>       | An AAStringSet, DNASTringSet, or RNASTringSet of unaligned sequences.   |
| <code>taxonomy</code>    | Character string providing the reference taxonomic assignment for each sequence in <code>train</code> . Taxonomic ranks are separated by semicolons (“;”) beginning with “Root”.  |
| <code>rank</code>        | Optionally, a <code>data.frame</code> with 5 named columns giving the “Index” (i.e., 0 to the number of unique taxa), “Name” (i.e., taxon name), “Parent” (i.e., “Index” of the parent taxon), “Level” (i.e., integer rank level), and “Rank” (e.g., “genus”) of each taxonomic rank. This information is often provided in a separate “taxid” file along with publicly available training sequence sets. |
| <code>K</code>           | Integer specifying the k-mer size or NULL (the default) to calculate the k-mer size automatically. The default value of K is such that matches between sequences are found by chance every N k-mers.  |
| <code>N</code>           | Numeric indicating the approximate number of k-mers that can be randomly selected before one is found by chance on average. For example, the default value of 500 will set K (when K is unspecified) so that every 500th k-mer is expected to match by chance.  |
| <code>minFraction</code> | Numeric giving the minimum fraction of k-mers to sample during the initial tree descent phase of the classification algorithm. (See details section below.)   |
| <code>maxFraction</code> | Numeric giving the maximum fraction of k-mers to sample during the initial tree descent phase of the classification algorithm. (See details section below.)   |



|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>maxIterations</code> | Integer specifying the maximum number of iterations to attempt re-classification of a training sequence before declaring it a “problem sequence”. (See details section below.)  |
| <code>multiplier</code>    | Numeric indicating the degree to which individual sequences have control over the fraction of k-mers sampled at any edge during the initial tree descent phase of the classification algorithm. (See details section below.)  |
| <code>maxChildren</code>   | Integer giving the maximum number of child taxa of any taxon at which to consider further descending the taxonomic tree. A value of 1 will prevent use of the tree descent algorithm altogether. Lower values may decrease classification speed, but result in output objects that require less memory. |
| <code>alphabet</code>      | Character vector of amino acid groupings used to reduce the 20 standard amino acids into smaller groups. Alphabet reduction helps to find more distant homologies between sequences. A non-reduced amino acid alphabet can be used by setting <code>alphabet</code> equal to <code>AA_STANDARD</code> . |
| <code>verbose</code>       | Logical indicating whether to display progress.   |

## Details

Learning about the training data is a two part process consisting of (i) forming a taxonomic tree and then (ii) ensuring that the training sequences can be correctly reclassified. The latter step relies on reclassifying the sequences in `train` by descending the taxonomic tree, a process termed “tree descent”. Ultimately, the goal of tree descent is to quickly and accurately narrow the selection of groups where a sequence may belong. During the learning process, tree descent is tuned so that it performs well when classifying new sequences.

The process of training the classifier first involves learning the taxonomic tree spanning all of the reference sequences in `train`. Typically, reference taxonomic classifications are provided by an authoritative source, oftentimes along with a “taxid” file containing taxonomic rank information. The taxonomic tree may contain any number of levels (e.g., Root, Phylum, Class, Order, Family, Genus) as long as they are hierarchically nested and always begin with “Root”.

The second phase of training the classifier, tree descent, involves learning the optimal set of k-mers for discerning between the different sub-groups under each edge. Here a fraction of the k-mers with the greatest discerning power are matched to a training sequence, and this process is repeated with 100 random subsamples to decide on the set of possible taxonomic groups to which a training sequence may belong.

The learning process works by attempting to correctly re-classify each training sequence in the taxonomy. Initially, `maxFraction` of informative k-mers are repeatedly sampled at each edge during tree descent. Training sequences that are incorrectly classified at an edge will lower the fraction of k-mers that are sampled by an amount that is proportional to `multiplier`. As the fraction of sampled k-mers decreases, the tree descent process terminates at higher rank levels.

A major advantage of tree descent is that it both speeds up the classification process and indicates where the training set likely contains mislabeled sequences or incorrectly-placed taxonomic groups. Training sequences that are not correctly classified within `maxIterations` are marked as “problem sequences”, because it is likely that they are mislabeled. If enough sequences have difficulty being correctly classified at an edge that the fraction drops below `minFraction`, then the edge is recorded as a “problem group”.

The final result is an object that can be used for classification with `IdTaxa`, as well as information about `train` that could be used to help correct any errors in the taxonomy.

**Value**

An object of class Taxa and subclass Train, which is stored as a list with components:

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| taxonomy         | A character vector containing all possible groups in the taxonomy.  |
| taxa             | A character vector containing the basal taxon in each taxonomy.   |
| ranks            | A character vector of rank names for each taxon, or NULL if rank information was not supplied.  |
| levels           | Integer giving the rank level of each taxon.  |
| children         | A list containing the index of all children in the taxonomy for each taxon.   |
| parents          | An integer providing the index of the parent for each taxon.  |
| fraction         | A numeric between minFraction and maxFraction that represents the learned fraction of informative k-mers to sample for each taxon during the initial tree descent phase of the classification algorithm. Problem groups are marked by a fraction of NA.   |
| sequences        | List containing the integer indices of sequences in train belonging to each taxon.  |
| kmers            | List containing the unique sorted k-mers (converted to integers) belonging to each sequence in train.   |
| crossIndex       | Integer indicating the index in taxonomy of each sequence's taxonomic label.  |
| K                | The value of K provided as input.   |
| IDFweights       | Numeric vector of length $4^K$ providing the inverse document frequency weight for each k-mer.  |
| decisionKmers    | List of informative k-mers and their associated relative frequencies for each internal edge in the taxonomy.  |
| problemSequences | A data.frame providing the "Index", "Expected" label, and "Predicted" taxon for sequences that could not be correctly classified during the initial tree descent phase of the algorithm.  |
| problemGroups    | Character vector containing any taxonomic groups that repeatedly had problems with correctly re-classifying sequences in train during the initial tree descent phase of the classification algorithm. Problem groups likely indicate that a number of the sequences (or an entire group of sequences) assigned to the problem group are incorrectly placed in the taxonomic tree. |
| alphabet         | The alphabet when train is an "AAStringSet", otherwise NULL.  |

**Note**

If K is NULL, the automatically determined value of K might be too large for some computers, resulting in an error. In such cases it is recommended that K be manually set to a smaller value.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**References**

Murali, A., et al. (2018). IDTAXA: a novel approach for accurate taxonomic classification of microbiome sequences. *Microbiome*, 6, 140. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s40168-018-0521-5>

**See Also**

[IdTaxa](#), [Taxa-class](#)

**Examples**

```
# import training sequences
fas <- system.file("extdata", "50S_ribosomal_protein_L2.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNAStringSet(fas)

# parse the headers to obtain a taxonomy
s <- strsplit(names(dna), " ")
genus <- sapply(s, `[`, 1)
species <- sapply(s, `[`, 2)
taxonomy <- paste("Root", genus, species, sep="; ")
head(taxonomy)

# train the classifier
trainingSet <- LearnTaxa(dna, taxonomy)
trainingSet

# view information about the classifier
plot(trainingSet)

## Not run:
# train the classifier with amino acid sequences
aa <- translate(dna)
trainingSetAA <- LearnTaxa(aa, taxonomy)
trainingSetAA

## End(Not run)
```

---

MapCharacters

*Map Changes in Ancestral Character States*


---

**Description**

Maps character changes on a phylogenetic tree containing reconstructed ancestral states.

**Usage**

```
MapCharacters(x,
             refPositions = seq_len(nchar(attr(x, "state")[1])),
             labelEdges = FALSE,
             type = "dendrogram",
```

```
chars = LETTERS,
ignoreIndels = TRUE)
```

### Arguments

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| x            | An object of class dendrogram with "state" attributes for each node.  |
| refPositions | Numeric vector of reference positions in the original sequence alignment. Only changes at refPositions are reported, and state changes are labeled according to their position in refPositions.                       |
| labelEdges   | Logical determining whether to label edges with the number of changes along each edge.  |
| type         | Character string indicating the type of output desired. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "dendrogram", "table", or "both". (See value section below.)   |
| chars        | Character vector specifying the characters to consider in state changes at each site. The default (LETTERS) is to consider any upper case letter. Alternatively, chars could be AA_STANDARD, DNA_BASES, or RNA_BASES. |
| ignoreIndels | Logical specifying whether to report insertions and deletions (indels). If TRUE (the default), only substitutions of one state with another are reported.   |

### Details

Ancestral state reconstruction affords the ability to identify character changes that occurred along edges of a rooted phylogenetic tree. Character changes are reported according to their index in refPositions. If ignoreIndels is FALSE, adjacent insertions and deletions are merged into single changes occurring at their first position. The table of changes can be used to identify parallel, convergent, and divergent mutations.

### Value

If type is "dendrogram" (the default) then the original dendrogram x is returned with the addition of "change" attributes on every edge except the root. If type is "table" then a sorted table of character changes is returned with the most frequent parallel changes at the beginning. If type is "both" then a list of length 2 is provided containing both the dendrogram and table.

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### See Also

[Treeline](#)

### Examples

```
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNAStringSet(fas)

tree <- Treeline(myXStringSet=dna, reconstruct=TRUE)
```

```

out <- MapCharacters(tree,
                    labelEdges=TRUE,
                    type="both",
                    chars=DNA_BASES)

# plot the tree with defaults
tree <- out[[1]]
plot(tree, horiz=TRUE) # edges show number of changes

# color edges by number of changes
maxC <- 200 # changes at maximum of color spectrum
colors <- colorRampPalette(c("black", "darkgreen", "green"))(maxC)
colorEdges <- function(x) {
  num <- attr(x, "edgetext") + 1
  if (length(num)==0)
    return(x)
  if (num > maxC)
    num <- maxC
  attr(x, "edgePar") <- list(col=colors[num])
  attr(x, "edgetext") <- NULL
  return(x)
}
colorfulTree <- dendrapply(tree, colorEdges)
plot(colorfulTree, horiz=TRUE, leaflab="none")

# look at parallel changes (X->Y)
parallel <- out[[2]]
head(parallel) # parallel changes

# look at convergent changes (*->Y)
convergent <- gsub(".*?([0-9]+).*", "\\1", names(parallel))
convergent <- tapply(parallel, convergent, sum)
convergent <- sort(convergent, decreasing=TRUE)
head(convergent)

# look at divergent changes (X->*)
divergent <- gsub(".*[0-9]+.*", "\\1", names(parallel))
divergent <- tapply(parallel, divergent, sum)
divergent <- sort(divergent, decreasing=TRUE)
head(divergent)

# plot number of changes by position
changes <- gsub(".*?([0-9]+).*", "\\1", names(parallel))
changes <- tapply(parallel, changes, sum)
plot(as.numeric(names(changes)),
     changes,
     xlab="Position",
     ylab="Total independent changes")

# count cases of potential compensatory mutations
compensatory <- dendrapply(tree,
  function(x) {

```

```

change <- attr(x, "change")
pos <- as.numeric(gsub(".*?([0-9]+).*", "\\1", change))
e <- expand.grid(seq_along(pos), seq_along(pos))
e <- e[pos[e[, 1]] < pos[e[, 2]],]
list(paste(change[e[, 1]], change[e[, 2]], sep=" & "))
})
compensatory <- unlist(compensatory)
u <- unique(compensatory)
m <- match(compensatory, u)
m <- tabulate(m, length(u))
compensatory <- sort(setNames(m, u), decreasing=TRUE)
head(compensatory) # ranked list of concurrent mutations

```

---

MaskAlignment

*Mask Highly Variable Regions of An Alignment*


---

## Description

Automatically masks poorly aligned regions of an alignment based on sequence conservation and gap frequency.

## Usage

```

MaskAlignment(myXStringSet,
              type = "sequences",
              windowSize = 5,
              threshold = 1,
              maxFractionGaps = 0.2,
              includeTerminalGaps = FALSE,
              correction = FALSE,
              randomBackground = FALSE,
              showPlot = FALSE)

```

## Arguments

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| myXStringSet        | An AStringSet, DNASTringSet, or RNASTringSet object of aligned sequences.   |
| type                | Character string indicating the type of result desired. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "sequences", "ranges", or "values". (See value section below.) |
| windowSize          | Integer value specifying the size of the region to the left and right of the center-point to use in calculating the moving average.                               |
| threshold           | Numeric giving the average entropy in bits below which a region is masked.  |
| maxFractionGaps     | Numeric specifying the maximum fraction of gaps in an alignment column to be masked.  |
| includeTerminalGaps | Logical specifying whether or not to include terminal gaps ( "." or "-" characters on each end of the sequences) into the calculation of gap fraction.            |

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| correction       | Logical indicating whether to apply a small-sample size correction to columns with few letters (Yu et al., 2015).  |
| randomBackground | Logical determining whether background letter frequencies are determined directly from myXStringSet (the default) or an uniform distribution of letters. |
| showPlot         | Logical specifying whether or not to show a plot of the positions that were kept or masked.  |

### Details

Poorly aligned regions of a multiple sequence alignment may lead to incorrect results in downstream analyses. One method to mitigate their effects is to mask columns of the alignment that may be poorly aligned, such as highly-variable regions or regions with many insertions and deletions (gaps).

Highly variable regions are detected by their signature of having a low information content. Here, information content is defined by the relative entropy of a column in the alignment (Yu et al., 2015), which is higher for conserved columns. The relative entropy is based on the background distribution of letter-frequencies in the alignment.

A moving average of `windowSize` nucleotides to the left and right of the center-point is applied to smooth noise in the information content signal along the sequence. Regions dropping below `threshold` bits or more than `maxFractionGaps` are masked.

### Value

If `type` is "sequences" then a `MultipleAlignment` object of the input type with masked columns where the input criteria are met. Otherwise, if `type` is "ranges" then an `IRanges` object giving the start and end positions of the masked columns. Else (`type` is "values") a `data.frame` containing one row per site in the alignment and three columns of information:

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| "entropy" | The entropy score of each column, in units of bits.                                 |
| "gaps"    | For each column, the fraction of gap characters ("- or ".).                         |
| "mask"    | A logical vector indicating whether or not the column met the criteria for masking. |

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### References

Yu, Y.-K., et al. (2015). Log-odds sequence logos. *Bioinformatics*, 31(3), 324-331. <http://doi.org/10.1093/bioinformatics/btu>

### See Also

[AlignSeqs](#), [Treeline](#)

## Examples

```

fas <- system.file("extdata", "Streptomyces_ITS_aligned.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNASTringSet(fas)
masked_dna <- MaskAlignment(dna, showPlot=TRUE)

# display only unmasked nucleotides for use in downstream analyses
not_masked <- as(masked_dna, "DNASTringSet")
BrowseSeqs(not_masked)

# display only masked nucleotides that are covered by the mask
masked <- masked_dna
colmask(masked, append="replace", invert=TRUE) <- colmask(masked)
masked <- as(masked, "DNASTringSet")
BrowseSeqs(masked)

# display the complete DNA sequence set including the mask
masks <- lapply(width(colmask(masked_dna)), rep, x="+")
masks <- unlist(lapply(masks, paste, collapse=""))
masked_dna <- replaceAt(dna, at=IRanges(colmask(masked_dna)), value=masks)
BrowseSeqs(masked_dna)

# get the start and end ranges of masked columns
ranges <- MaskAlignment(dna, type="ranges")
ranges
replaceAt(dna, ranges) # remove the masked columns

# obtain the entropy scores of each column
values <- MaskAlignment(dna, type="values")
head(values)

```

---

MeltDNA

*Simulate Melting of DNA*


---

## Description

The denaturation of double-stranded DNA occurs over a range of temperatures. Beginning from a helical state, DNA will transition to a random-coil state as temperature is increased. MeltDNA predicts the positional helicity, melt curve, or its negative derivative at different temperatures.

## Usage

```

MeltDNA(myDNASTringSet,
        type = "derivative",
        temps = 50:100,
        ions = 0.2)

```



**Arguments**

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| myDNAStringSet | A DNAStringSet object or character vector with one or more sequences in 5' to 3' orientation.  |
| type           | Character string indicating the type of results desired. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "derivative curves", "melt curves", or "positional probabilities". |
| temps          | Numeric vector of temperatures (in degrees Celsius).   |
| ions           | Numeric giving the molar sodium equivalent ionic concentration. Values must be at least 0.01M.   |

**Details**

When designing a high resolution melt (HRM) assay, it is useful to be able to predict the results before performing the experiment. Multi-state models of DNA melting can provide near-qualitative agreement with experimental DNA melt curves obtained with quantitative PCR (qPCR). MeltDNA employs the algorithm of Tostesen et al. (2003) with an approximation for loop entropy that runs in nearly linear time and memory, which allows very long DNA sequences (up to 100,000 base pairs) to be analyzed.

Denaturation is a highly cooperative process whereby regions of double-stranded DNA tend to melt together. For short sequences (< 100 base pairs) there is typically a single transition from a helical to random-coil state. Longer sequences may exhibit more complex melting behavior with multiple peaks, as domains of the DNA melt at different temperatures. The melting curve represents the average fractional helicity (Theta) at each temperature, and can be used for genotyping with high resolution melt analysis.

**Value**

MeltDNA can return three types of results: positional helicity, melting curves, or the negative derivative of the melting curves. If type is "position", then a list is returned with one component for each sequence in myDNAStringSet. Each list component contains a matrix with the probability of helicity (Theta) at each temperature (rows) and every position in the sequence (columns).

If type is "melt", then a matrix with the average Theta across the entire sequence is returned. This matrix has a row for each input temperature (temps), and a column for each sequence in myDNAStringSet. For example, the value in element [3, 4] is the average helicity of the fourth input sequence at the third input temperature. If type is "derivative" then the values in the matrix are the derivative of the melt curve at each temperature.

**Note**

MeltDNA uses nearest neighbor parameters from SantaLucia (1998).

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

## References

- SantaLucia, J. (1998). A unified view of polymer, dumbbell, and oligonucleotide DNA nearest-neighbor thermodynamics. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 95(4), 1460-1465.
- Tostesen, E., et al. (2003). Speed-up of DNA melting algorithm with complete nearest neighbor properties. *Biopolymers*, 70(3), 364-376. doi:10.1002/bip.10495.

## See Also

[AmplifyDNA](#), [CalculateEfficiencyPCR](#), [DesignSignatures](#)

## Examples

```
fas <- system.file("extdata", "IDH2.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNASet(fas)

# plot the melt curve for the two alleles
temps <- seq(85, 100, 0.2)
m <- MeltDNA(dna,
             type="melt", temps=temps, ions=0.1)
matplot(temps, m,
        type="l", xlab="Temperature (\u00B0C)", ylab="Average Theta")
legend("topright", names(dna), lty=seq_along(dna), col=seq_along(dna))

# plot the negative derivative curve for a subsequence of the two alleles
temps <- seq(80, 95, 0.25)
m <- MeltDNA(subseq(dna, 492, 542),
             type="derivative", temps=temps)
matplot(temps, m,
        type="l", xlab="Temperature (\u00B0C)", ylab="-d(Theta)/dTemp")
legend("topright", names(dna), lty=seq_along(dna), col=seq_along(dna))

# plot the positional helicity profile for the IDH2 allele
temps <- seq(90.1, 90.5, 0.1)
m <- MeltDNA(dna[1],
             type="position", temps=temps, ions=0.1)
matplot(seq_len(dim(m[[1]])[2]), t(m[[1]]),
        type="l", xlab="Nucleotide Position", ylab="Theta")
temps <- formatC(temps, digits=1, format="f")
legend("topright", legend=paste(temps, "\u00B0C", sep=""),
      col=seq_along(temps), lty=seq_along(temps), bg="white")
```

## Description

The MIQS amino acid substitution matrix defined by Yamada & Tomii (2014).

**Usage**

```
data("MIQS")
```

**Format**

The format is: num [1:25, 1:25] 3.2 -1.3 -0.4 -0.4 1.5 -0.2 -0.4 0.4 -1.2 -1.3 ... - attr(\*, "dimnames")=List of 2 ..\$ : chr [1:25] "A" "R" "N" "D" ... ..\$ : chr [1:25] "A" "R" "N" "D" ...

**Details**

Substitution matrix values represent the log-odds of observing an aligned pair of amino acids versus the likelihood of finding the pair by chance. Values in the MIQS matrix are in units of third-bits ( $\log(\text{odds ratio}) * 3/\log(2)$ ).

**Source**

Yamada, K., & Tomii, K. (2014). Revisiting amino acid substitution matrices for identifying distantly related proteins. *Bioinformatics*, **30(3)**, 317-325.

**Examples**

```
data(MIQS)
MIQS["A", "R"] # score for A/R pairing

data(BLOSUM)
plot(BLOSUM[1:20, 1:20], "62", MIQS[1:20, 1:20])
abline(a=0, b=1)
```

---

MMLSUM

*MMLSUM Amino Acid Substitution Matrices*


---

**Description**

The MMLSUM amino acid substitution matrices defined by Sumanaweera, D., et al. (2022).

**Usage**

```
data("MMLSUM")
```

**Format**

The format is: num [1:21, 1:21, 1:9] 10.31 -10.46 -11.95 -13.59 -8.33 ... - attr(\*, "dimnames")=List of 3 ..\$ : chr [1:21] "A" "R" "N" "D" ... ..\$ : chr [1:21] "A" "R" "N" "D" ... ..\$ : chr [1:9] "10" "20" "30" "40" ...

**Details**

Substitution matrix values represent the log-odds of observing an aligned pair of amino acids versus the likelihood of finding the pair by chance. The MMLSUM substitution matrices are stored as an array named by each sub-matrix's similarity threshold. (See examples section below.) In all cases values are in units of third-bits ( $\log(\text{odds ratio}) * 3/\log(2)$ ).

**Source**

Sumanaweera, D., et al. (2022). Bridging the gaps in statistical models of protein alignment. *Bioinformatics*, **38**(Supplement\_1), i228-i237.

**Examples**

```
data(MMLSUM)
MMLSUM60 <- MMLSUM[, , "60"] # the MMLSUM60 matrix
MMLSUM60["A", "R"] # score for A/R pairing

data(BLOSUM)
plot(BLOSUM[1:20, 1:20, "62"], MMLSUM60[1:20, 1:20])
abline(a=0, b=1)
```

---

MODELS

*Available Models of Sequence Evolution*


---

**Description**

Models of sequence evolution that are supported.

**Usage**

MODELS

**Details**

MODELS is a list of two elements: a character vector of (eight) nucleotide models and a character vector of (37) protein models. All MODELS are time reversible.

Nucleotide models are described in order of increasing number of parameters as follows:

**JC69 (Jukes and Cantor, 1969)** The simplest substitution model that assumes equal base frequencies (1/4) and equal mutation rates.

**K80 (Kimura, 1980)** Assumes equal base frequencies, but distinguishes between the rate of transitions and transversions.

**T92 (Tamura, 1992)** In addition to distinguishing between transitions and transversions, a parameter is added to represent G+C content bias.

**F81 (Felsenstein, 1981)** Assumes equal mutation rates, but allows all bases to have different frequencies.

**HKY85** (Hasegawa, Kishino and Yano, 1985) Distinguishes transitions from transversions and allows bases to have different frequencies. Note that a similar model is known as **F84** (Felsenstein, 1984).

**TN93** (Tamura and Nei, 1993) Allows for unequal base frequencies and distinguishes between transversions and the two possible types of transitions (i.e.,  $A \leftrightarrow G$  &  $C \leftrightarrow T$ ).

**SYM** (Zharkikh, 1994) Equal base frequencies but all substitution rates are free parameters.

**GTR** (Tavare, 1986) The general time reversible model allowing for unequal base frequencies and substitution rates.

Protein models are described in the following publications, which include both a rate matrix and corresponding frequencies:

**AB** (Mirsky, 2015) [Antibody]

**BLOSUM62** (Henikoff, 1992) [General]

**cpREV** (Adachi, 2000) [Plastid]

**cpREV64** (Zhong, 2010) [Plastid]

**Dayhoff** (Dayhoff, 1978) [General]

**DCMut-Dayhoff** (Kosiol, 2005) [General]

**DCMut-JTT** (Kosiol, 2005) [General]

**DEN** (Le, 2018) [Dengue virus]

**FLAVI** (Le, 2020) [Flavi virus]

**FLU** (Dang, 2010) [Influenza virus]

**gcpREV** (Cox, 2013) [Green plant chloroplast]

**HIVb** (Nickle, 2007) [Human immunodeficiency virus]

**HIVw** (Nickle, 2007) [Human immunodeficiency virus]

**JTT** (Jones, 1992) [General]

**LG** (Le, 2008) [General]

**MtArt** (Abascal, 2007) [Arthropoda mitochondrion]

**mtDeu** (Le, 2017) [Deuterostomia mitochondrion]

**mtInv** (Le, 2017) [Invertebrate mitochondrion]

**mtMam** (Yang, 1998) [Mammal mitochondrion]

**mtMet** (Le, 2017) [Metazoan mitochondrion]

**mtOrt** (Chang, 2020) [Orthoptera mitochondrion]

**mtREV** (Adachi, 1996) [Vertebrate mitochondrion]

**mtVer** (Le, 2017) [Vertebrate mitochondrion]

**MtZoa** (Rota-Stabelli, 2009) [Metazoa mitochondrion]

**PMB** (Veerassamy, 2003) [General]

**Q.bird** (Minh, 2021) [Birds]

**Q.insect** (Minh, 2021) [Insects]

**Q.LG** (Minh, 2021) [General]

**Q.mammal** (Minh, 2021) [Mammals]  
**Q.pfam** (Minh, 2021) [General]  
**Q.plant** (Minh, 2021) [Plants]  
**Q.yeast** (Minh, 2021) [Yeast]  
**rtREV** (Dimmic, 2002) [Retrovirus]  
**stmtREV** (Liu, 2014) [Land plant mitochondrion]  
**VT** (Muller, 2000) [General]  
**WAG** (Whelan, 2001) [General]  
**WAGstar** (Whelan, 2001) [General]

**+G** (Yang, 1993) Specifying any model+G# adds a single parameter to any of the above models to relax the assumption of equal rates among sites in the sequence. The single parameter specifies the shape of the Gamma distribution, which is represented with 2-10 discrete rates and their respective probabilities. For example, specifying a model+G8 would represent the continuous Gamma Distribution with eight rates and their associated probabilities.

**+F** Specifying any model+F uses fixed empirical frequencies rather than optimized state frequencies. This is only applicable for models having state frequencies with free parameters.

**+Indels** Specifying any model+Indels adds an additional state for gaps (“-” and “.” characters) and parameters for the frequency of gaps and the transition rate from non-gaps to gaps.

## References

- Abascal, F., Posada, D., and Zardoya, R. (2007) *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, **24**, 1-5.
- Adachi, J. and Hasegawa, M. (1996) *Journal of Molecular Evolution*, **42**, 459-468.
- Adachi, J., Waddell, P., Martin, W., and Hasegawa, M. (2000) *Journal of Molecular Evolution*, **50**, 348-358.
- Chang, H., Nie, Y., Zhang, N., Zhang, X., Sun, H., Mao, Y., Qiu, Z., and Huang, Y. (2020) *BMC Ecology and Evolution*, **20**, 57.
- Cox, C. and Foster, P. (2013) *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution*, **68**, 218-220.
- Dang, C., Le, S., Gascuel, O., and Le, V. (2010) *BMC Evolutionary Biology*, **10**, 99.
- Dayhoff, M., Schwartz, R., and Orcutt, B. (1978) *Atlas of Protein Sequence and Structure*, National Biomedical Research Foundation, Washington DC, **5**, 345-352.
- Dimmic, M., Rest, J., Mindell, D., and Goldstein, R. (2002) *Journal of Molecular Evolution*, **55**, 65-73.
- Felsenstein, J. (1981) Evolutionary trees from DNA sequences: a maximum likelihood approach. *Journal of Molecular Evolution*, **17(6)**, 368-376.
- Felsenstein, J. (1984) A Hidden Markov Model approach to variation among sites in rate of evolution. *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, **13(1)**, 93-104.
- Felsenstein, J. (2001) Taking Variation of Evolutionary Rates Between Sites into Account in Inferring Phylogenies. *Journal of molecular evolution*, **53(4-5)**, 447-455.
- Hasegawa, M., Kishino H., Yano T. (1985) Dating of human-ape splitting by a molecular clock of mitochondrial DNA. *Journal of Molecular Evolution*, **22(2)**, 160-174.

- Henikoff, S. and Henikoff, J. (1992) *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the USA*, **89**, 10915-10919.
- Jones, D., Taylor, W., and Thornton, J. (1992) *Computer Applications in the Biosciences*, **8**, 275-282.
- Jukes, T. and Cantor C. (1969) *Evolution of Protein Molecules*. New York: Academic Press. pp. 21-132.
- Kimura, M. (1980) A simple method for estimating evolutionary rates of base substitutions through comparative studies of nucleotide sequences. *Journal of Molecular Evolution*, **16**(2), 111-120.
- Kosiol, C. and Goldman, N. (2005) *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, **22**, 193-199.
- Le, S. and Gascuel, O. (2008) *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, **25**, 1307-1320.
- Le, T., Dang, C., and Le, S. (2018) *Proceedings of 10th International Conference on Knowledge and Systems Engineering (KSE 2018)*, Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam, 242-246.
- Le, T., and Vinh, L. (2020) *Journal of Molecular Evolution*, **88**, 445-452.
- Le, V., Dang, C., and Le, S. (2017) *BMC Evolutionary Biology*, **17**, 136.
- Liu, Y., Cox, C., Wang, W., and Goffinet, B. (2014) *Systematic Biology*, **63**, 862-878.
- Minh, B., Dang, C., Le, S., and Lanfear, R. (2021) *Systematic Biology*, syab010.
- Mirsky, A., Kazandjian, L., and Anisimova, M. (2015) *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, **32**, 806-819.
- Muller, T. and Vingron, M. (2000) *Journal of Computational Biology*, **7**, 761-776.
- Nickle, D., Heath, L., Jensen, M., Gilbert P., and Mullins, J., Kosakovsky Pond SL (2007) *PLoS ONE*, **2**, e503.
- Rota-Stabelli, O., Yang, Z., and Telford, M. (2009) *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution*, **52**, 268-272.
- Tamura, K. (1992) Estimation of the number of nucleotide substitutions when there are strong transition-transversion and G+C content biases. *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, **9**(4), 678-687.
- Tamura, K. and Nei M. (1993) Estimation of the number of nucleotide substitutions in the control region of mitochondrial DNA in humans and chimpanzees. *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, **10**(3), 512-526.
- Tavare, S. (1986) "Some Probabilistic and Statistical Problems in the Analysis of DNA Sequences." *Lectures on Mathematics in the Life Sciences*, **17**: 57-86.
- Veerassamy, S., Smith, A., and Tillier, E. (2003) *Journal of Computational Biology*, **10**, 997-1010.
- Whelan, S. and Goldman, N. (2001) *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, **18**, 691-699.
- Yang, Z., Nielsen, R., and Hasegawa, M. (1998) *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, **15**, 1600-1611.
- Yang, Z. (1993) Maximum-likelihood estimation of phylogeny from DNA sequences when substitution rates differ over sites. *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, **10**(6), 1396-1401.
- Zharkikh, A. (1994) Estimation of evolutionary distances between nucleotide sequences. *Journal of Molecular Evolution*, **39**, 315-329.
- Zhong, B., Yonezawa, T., Zhong, Y., and Hasegawa, M. (2010) *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, **27**, 2855-2863.

**See Also**

[DistanceMatrix](#), [Treeline](#)

**Examples**

```
str(MODELS)
```

---

|      |  |
|------|--|
| NNLS | <i>Sequential Coordinate-wise Algorithm for the Non-negative Least Squares Problem</i> |
|------|--|

---

**Description**

Consider the linear system  $Ax = b$  where  $A \in R^{m \times n}$ ,  $x \in R^n$ , and  $b \in R^m$ . The technique of least squares proposes to compute  $x$  so that the sum of squared residuals is minimized. NNLS solves the least squares problem  $\min \|Ax = b\|^2$  subject to the constraint  $x \geq 0$ . This implementation of the Sequential Coordinate-wise Algorithm uses a sparse input matrix  $A$ , which makes it efficient for large sparse problems.

**Usage**

```
NNLS(A,  
      b,  
      precision = sqrt(.Machine$double.eps),  
      processors = 1,  
      verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| A          | List representing the sparse matrix with integer components i and j, numeric component x. The fourth component, dimnames, is a list of two components that contains the names for every row (component 1) and column (component 2). |
| b          | Numeric matrix for the set of observed values. (See details section below.)   |
| precision  | The desired accuracy.   |
| processors | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |
| verbose    | Logical indicating whether to display progress.   |

**Details**

The input  $b$  can be either a matrix or a vector of numerics. If it is a matrix then it is assumed that each column contains a set of observations, and the output  $x$  will have the same number of columns. This allows multiple NNLS problems using the same  $A$  matrix to be solved simultaneously, and greatly accelerates computation relative to solving each sequentially.



**Value**

A list of two components:

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| x   | The matrix of non-negative values that best explains the observed values given by $b$ . |
| res | A matrix of residuals given by $Ax - b$ .   |

**References**

Franc, V., et al. (2005). Sequential coordinate-wise algorithm for the non-negative least squares problem. *Computer Analysis of Images and Patterns*, 407-414.

**See Also**

[Array2Matrix](#), [DesignArray](#)

**Examples**

```
# unconstrained least squares:
A <- matrix(c(1, -3, 2, -3, 10, -5, 2, -5, 6), ncol=3)
b <- matrix(c(27, -78, 64), ncol=1)
x <- solve(crossprod(A), crossprod(A, b))

# Non-negative least squares:
w <- which(A > 0, arr.ind=TRUE)
A <- list(i=w[, "row"], j=w[, "col"], x=A[w[, "row"],
      dimnames=list(1:dim(A)[1], 1:dim(A)[2])])
x_nonneg <- NNLS(A, b)

# compare the unconstrained and constrained solutions:
cbind(x, x_nonneg$x)

# the input value "b" can also be a matrix:
b2 <- matrix(b, nrow=length(b), ncol=2) # repeat b in two columns
x_nonneg <- NNLS(A, b2) # solution is repeated in two output columns
```

---

NonCoding

*NonCoding Objects and Methods*

---

**Description**

Non-coding RNAs can be represented by their conserved sequence motifs, secondary structure, and k-mer frequencies. Class `NonCoding` provides objects and functions for representing non-coding RNAs.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'NonCoding'
print(x, ...)
```

**Arguments**

`x` An object of class `NonCoding`.  
`...` Other optional parameters.

**Details**

Objects of class `NonCoding` are stored as lists containing a compact representation of a family of non-coding RNAs. The first list component is a matrix of sequence motifs that identify the non-coding RNAs, the second is a matrix of hairpin loops that are conserved across the family, the third is a list of k-mer frequencies derived from representative sequences, and the fourth is a vector of log-odds scores for sequence lengths. An optional fifth list component denotes the log-odds scores for dependencies among patterns. Patterns are defined by their distance to either end of the non-coding RNA, which helps to identify the boundaries of the non-coding RNA in a genome.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**References**

Wright, E. S. (2021). FindNonCoding: rapid and simple detection of non-coding RNAs in genomes. *Bioinformatics*. <https://doi.org/10.1093/bioinformatics/btab708>

**See Also**

[LearnNonCoding](#), [FindNonCoding](#)

**Examples**

```
data(NonCodingRNA_Bacteria)
x <- NonCodingRNA_Bacteria
print(x)
class(x)
attributes(x[[1]])
x[[1]] # the first non-coding RNA
x[[1]][["motifs"]] # sequence motifs
x[[1]][["hairpins"]] # hairpin loops
head(x[[1]][["kmers"]]) # k-mer frequencies
```

**Description**

Pre-trained with NonCoding models for common RNA families found in genomes from organisms belonging to each domain of life.

**Usage**

```
data("NonCodingRNA_Archaea")
```

**Details**

A set of NonCoding models contained in a named list. Models were built from up to 1000 representative sequences per non-coding RNA family.

**Source**

Models were built from sequences belonging to families in tRNADB-CE (<http://trna.ie.niigata-u.ac.jp/cgi-bin/trnadb/index.cgi>) or Rfam (<http://rfam.xfam.org>).

**Examples**

```
data(NonCodingRNA_Archaea)
data(NonCodingRNA_Bacteria)
data(NonCodingRNA_Eukarya)
names(NonCodingRNA_Bacteria)
head(NonCodingRNA_Bacteria)
```

---

OrientNucleotides      *Orient Nucleotide Sequences*

---

**Description**

Orients nucleotide sequences to match the directionality and complementarity of specified reference sequences.

**Usage**

```
OrientNucleotides(myXStringSet,
                  reference = which.max(width(myXStringSet)),
                  type = "sequences",
                  orientation = "both",
                  threshold = 0.05,
                  verbose = TRUE,
                  processors = 1)
```

**Arguments**

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| myXStringSet | A DNASTringSet or RNASTringSet of unaligned sequences.  |
| reference    | The index of reference sequences with the same (desired) orientation. By default the first sequence with maximum width will be used.        |
| type         | Character string indicating the type of results desired. This should be (an abbreviation of) either "sequences", "orientations", or "both". |

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| orientation | Character string(s) indicating the allowed reorientation(s) of non-reference sequences. This should be (an abbreviation of) either "all", "reverse", "complement", and/or "both" (for reverse complement). |
| threshold   | Numeric giving the decrease in k-mer distance required to adopt the alternative orientation.   |
| verbose     | Logical indicating whether to display progress.  |
| processors  | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.   |

### Details

Biological sequences can sometimes have inconsistent orientation that interferes with their analysis. OrientNucleotides will reorient sequences by changing their directionality and/or complementarity to match specified reference sequences in the same set, which are assumed to have the same orientation. The process works by finding the k-mer distance between the reference sequence(s) and each allowed orientation of the sequences. Alternative orientations that lessen the distance by at least threshold are adopted. Note that this procedure requires a moderately similar reference sequence be available for each sequence that needs to be reoriented. Sequences for which a corresponding reference is unavailable will most likely be left alone because alternative orientations will not pass the threshold. For this reason, it is recommended to specify several diverse sequences as references.

### Value

OrientNucleotides can return two types of results: the relative orientations of sequences and/or the reoriented sequences. If type is "sequences" (the default) then the reoriented sequences are returned. If type is "orientations" then a character vector is returned that specifies whether sequences were reversed ("r"), complemented ("c"), reversed complemented ("rc"), or in the same orientation ("") as the reference sequences (marked by NA). If type is "both" then the output is a list with the first component containing the "orientations" and the second component containing the "sequences".

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### See Also

[CorrectFrameshifts](#)

### Examples

```
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNAStrngSet(fas)
dna <- RemoveGaps(dna)
DNA <- dna # 175 sequences

# reorient subsamples of the first 169 sequences
s <- sample(169, 30)
```

```
DNA[s] <- reverseComplement(dna[s])
s <- sample(169, 30)
DNA[s] <- reverse(dna[s])
s <- sample(169, 30)
DNA[s] <- complement(dna[s])

DNA <- OrientNucleotides(DNA, reference=170:175)
DNA==dna # all were correctly reoriented
```

PAM

*PAM Amino Acid Substitution Matrices***Description**

The PAM amino acid substitution matrices defined by Dayhoff, M., et al. (1978).

**Usage**

```
data("PAM")
```

**Format**

The format is: num [1:24, 1:24, 1:50] 10.5 -15 -10.5 -9 -15 -10.5 -7.5 -6 -16.5 -12 ... - attr(\*, "dimnames")=List of 3 ..\$ : chr [1:24] "A" "R" "N" "D" ... ..\$ : chr [1:24] "A" "R" "N" "D" ... ..\$ : chr [1:50] "10" "20" "30" "40" ...

**Details**

Substitution matrix values represent the log-odds of observing an aligned pair of amino acids versus the likelihood of finding the pair by chance. The PAM substitution matrices are stored as an array named by each sub-matrix's percentage accepted mutations. (See examples section below.) In all cases values are in units of third-bits ( $\log(\text{odds ratio}) * 3/\log(2)$ ).

**Source**

Dayhoff, M., et al. (1978). A model of evolutionary change in proteins. *Atlas of protein sequence and structure*, **5**, 345-358.

**Examples**

```
data(PAM)
PAM250 <- PAM[, , "250"] # the PAM250 matrix
PAM250["A", "R"] # score for A/R pairing

data(BLOSUM)
plot(BLOSUM[1:20, 1:20, "62"], PAM250[1:20, 1:20])
abline(a=0, b=1)
```

PFASUM

*PFASUM Amino Acid Substitution Matrices***Description**

The PFASUM amino acid substitution matrices defined by Keul, F., et al. (2017).

**Usage**

```
data("PFASUM")
```

**Format**

The format is: num [1:25, 1:25, 1:90] 0.9492 -1.7337 0.2764 1.8153 0.0364 ... - attr(\*, "dim-names")=List of 3 ..\$ : chr [1:25] "A" "R" "N" "D" ... ..\$ : chr [1:25] "A" "R" "N" "D" ... ..\$ : chr [1:90] "11" "12" "13" "14" ...

**Details**

Substitution matrix values represent the log-odds of observing an aligned pair of amino acids versus the likelihood of finding the pair by chance. The PFASUM substitution matrices are stored as an array named by each sub-matrix's similarity threshold. (See examples section below.) In all cases values are in units of third-bits ( $\log(\text{odds ratio}) * 3/\log(2)$ ).

**Source**

Keul, F., et al. (2017). PFASUM: a substitution matrix from Pfam structural alignments. *BMC Bioinformatics*, **18(1)**, 293.

**Examples**

```
data(PFASUM)
PFASUM62 <- PFASUM[, , "62"] # the PFASUM62 matrix
PFASUM62["A", "R"] # score for A/R pairing

data(BLOSUM)
plot(BLOSUM[1:20, 1:20, "62"], PFASUM62[1:20, 1:20])
abline(a=0, b=1)
```

**Description**

Predicts a consensus RNA secondary structure from a multiple sequence alignment using mutual information.

**Usage**

```
PredictDBN(myXStringSet,
           type = "states",
           minOccupancy = 0.4,
           impact = c(1, 1.2, 0.4, -1),
           avgProdCorr = 1,
           slope = 2,
           shift = 1.3,
           threshold = 0.4,
           pseudoknots = 1,
           weight = NA,
           useFreeEnergy = TRUE,
           deltaGrules = NULL,
           processors = 1,
           verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| myXStringSet | A DNASTringSet or RNASTringSet object containing aligned sequences.   |
| type         | Character string indicating the type of results desired. This should be (an unambiguous abbreviation of) one of "states", "pairs", "evidence", "scores", "structures", or "search". (See value section below.)                      |
| minOccupancy | Numeric specifying the minimum occupancy (1 - fraction of gaps) required to include a column of the alignment in the prediction.  |
| impact       | A vector with four elements giving the weights of A/U, G/C, G/U, and other pairings, respectively. The last element of impact is the penalty for pairings that are inconsistent with two positions being paired (e.g., A/- or A/C). |
| avgProdCorr  | Numeric specifying the weight of the average product correction (APC) term, as described in Buslje et al. (2009).   |
| slope        | Numeric giving the slope of the sigmoid used to convert mutual information values to scores ranging from zero to one.   |
| shift        | Numeric giving the relative shift of the sigmoid used to convert mutual information values to scores ranging from zero to one.  |
| threshold    | Numeric specifying the score threshold at which to consider positions for pairing. Only applicable if type is "states" or "pairs".  |

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| pseudoknots   | Integer indicating the maximum order of pseudoknots that are acceptable. A value of 0 will prevent pseudoknots in the structure, whereas 1 (the default) will attempt to find first-order pseudoknots. Only used if type is "states" or "pairs". |
| weight        | Either a numeric vector of weights for each sequence, a single number implying equal weights, or NA (the default) to automatically calculate sequence weights based on myXStringSet.   |
| useFreeEnergy | Logical determining whether RNA free energy predictions should be incorporated along with mutual information into the secondary structure prediction.  |
| deltaGrules   | Free energy rules for all possible base pairings in quadruplets. If NULL, defaults to pseudoenergies ( <code>deltaGrulesRNA</code> ). Only applicable if useFreeEnergies is TRUE.  |
| processors    | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.   |
| verbose       | Logical indicating whether to display progress.  |

## Details

PredictDBN employs an extension of the method described by Freyhult et al. (2005) for determining a consensus RNA secondary structure. It uses the mutual information ( $H$ ) measure to find covarying positions in a multiple sequence alignment. The original method is modified by the addition of different weights for each type of base pairing and each input sequence. The formula for mutual information between positions  $i$  and  $j$  then becomes:

$$H(i, j) = \sum_{XY \in bp} \left( impact(XY) \cdot f_{i,j}(XY) \cdot \log_2 \left( \frac{f_{i,j}(XY)}{f_i(X) \cdot f_j(Y)} \right) \right)$$

where,  $bp$  denotes the base pairings A/U, C/G, and G/U;  $impact$  is their weight;  $f$  is the frequency of single bases or pairs weighted by the corresponding weight of each sequence.

A penalty is then added for bases that are inconsistent with pairing:

$$H_{mod}(i, j) = H(i, j) + \sum_{XY \notin bp} \left( impact(XY) \cdot f_{i,j}(XY) \right)$$

Next an average product correction (Buslje et al., 2009) is applied to the matrix  $H$ :

$$H_{APC}(i, j) = H_{mod}(i, j) - avgProdCorr \cdot \frac{H_{mod}(i, \cdot) \cdot H_{mod}(\cdot, j)}{H_{mod}(\cdot, \cdot)}$$

The mutual information values are then rescaled between 0 and 1 by applying a sigmoidal transformation, which is controlled by `shift` and `slope`:

$$H_{final}(i, j) = \left( 1 + \exp \left( slope \cdot \log_e \left( \frac{H_{APC}(i, j)}{shift \cdot H_{APC}[n]} \right) \right) \right)^{-1}$$



where,  $n$  is the number of positions having `minOccupancy` divided by two (i.e., the maximum possible number of paired positions) and  $H_{APC}[n]$  denotes the  $n^{th}$  highest value in the matrix  $H_{APC}$ .

If `useFreeEnergies` is `TRUE`, mutual information is supplemented with a probabilistic model of folding based on `deltaGrules`. That is, palindromes in each sequence are ranked by their free energy, and converted to probabilities of base pairing by assuming an exponential distribution of free energies. This tends to improve predictive accuracy when the aligned sequences are insufficiently diverse for considerable evidence of compensatory mutations.

If `type` is "states" or "pairs", the secondary structure is determined using a variant of the Nussinov algorithm similar to that described by Venkatachalam et al. (2014). Pairings with a score below `threshold` are not considered during the traceback. If `psuedoknots` is greater than 0, paired positions are removed from consideration and the method is applied again to find pseudoknots.

In practice the secondary structure prediction is most accurate when the input alignment is of high quality, contains a wide diversity of sequences, the number of sequences is large, no regions are completely conserved across all sequences, and most of the sequences span the entire alignment (i.e., there are few partial/incomplete sequences).

## Value

If `type` is "states" (the default), then the output is a character vector with the predicted secondary structure assignment for each position in `myXStringSet`. Standard dot-bracket notation (DBN) is used, where "." signifies an unpaired position, "(" and ")" a paired position, and successive "[]", "{ }", and "<>" indicate increasing order pseudoknots. Columns below `minOccupancy` are denoted by the "-" character to indicate that they contained too many gaps to be included in the consensus structure.

If `type` is "pairs", then a matrix is returned with one row for each base pairing and three columns giving the positions of the paired bases and their pseudoknot order.

If `type` is "evidence", then a matrix is returned with one row for each base pairing and three columns giving the positions of the paired bases and their respective scores (greater than or equal to `threshold`). This differs from `type` "pairs" in that "evidence" does not perform a traceback. Therefore, it is possible to have conflicting evidence where a single base has evidence for pairing with multiple other bases.

If `type` is "scores", then a matrix of three rows is returned, where the values in a column represent the maximum score for a state in each position. Columns sum to 1 if the position was above `minOccupancy` and 0 otherwise.

If `type` is "structures", then the output is a list with one element for each sequence in `myXStringSet`. Each list element contains a matrix of dimension 3 (each state) by the number of nucleotides in the sequence. Columns of the matrix sum to zero where the nucleotide was located in a position that was below `minOccupancy`. Otherwise, positions are considered paired if they are consistent with pairing (i.e., A/U, C/G, or G/U) in the consensus secondary structure.

When `type` is "search" the results are similar to "structures", but an attempt is made to find additional secondary structure beyond positions exhibiting covariation. First, anchors are identified as pairs of covarying positions with their score above `threshold`. Next, the regions between anchors are searched for previously unidentified stem loops. Finally, any helices are assigned a score according to their length, i.e. one minus the probability of finding that many consecutive pairs within

the anchor boundaries by chance. Hence, output type "search" will find secondary structure outside of the consensus structure shared by most sequences, and can identify secondary structure in conserved alignment regions.

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### References

- Buslje, C., et al. (2009). Correction for phylogeny, small number of observations and data redundancy improves the identification of coevolving amino acid pairs using mutual information. *Bioinformatics*, **25(9)**, 1125-1131.
- Freyhult, E., et al. (2005). Predicting RNA Structure Using Mutual Information. *Applied Bioinformatics*, **4(1)**, 53-59.
- Venkatachalam, B., et al. (2014). Faster algorithms for RNA-folding using the Four-Russians method. *Algorithms for Molecular Biology : AMB*, **9(1)**, 1-12.
- Wright, E. S. (2020). RNAconTest: comparing tools for noncoding RNA multiple sequence alignment based on structural consistency. *RNA* 2020, 26, 531-540.

### See Also

[PredictHEC](#)

### Examples

```
# load the example non-coding RNA sequences
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNASTringSet(fas)
rna <- RNASTringSet(dna)

## Not run:
# predict the secondary structure in dot-bracket notation (dbn)
p <- PredictDBN(rna, "states") # predict the secondary structure in dbn
p # pairs are denoted by (), and (optionally) pseudoknots by [], {}, and <>

# convert the dot-bracket notation into pairs of positions within the alignment
p <- PredictDBN(rna, "pairs") # paired positions in the alignment
head(p) # matrix giving the pairs and their pseudoknot order (when > 0)

# plot an arc diagram with the base pairings
plot(NA, xlim=c(0, 1), ylim=c(0, 1),
     xaxs="i", yaxs="i",
     xlab="Alignment position", ylab="",
     bty="n", xaxt="n", yaxt="n")
ticks <- pretty(seq_len(width(rna)[1]))
axis(1, ticks/width(rna)[1], ticks)
rs <- c(seq(0, pi, len=100), NA)
r <- (p[, 2] - p[, 1] + 1)/width(rna)[1]/2
r <- rep(r, each=101)
```

```

x <- (p[, 1] + p[, 2])/2/width(rna)[1]
x <- rep(x, each=101) + r*cos(rs)
y <- r*sin(rs)/max(r, na.rm=TRUE)
lines(x, y, xpd=TRUE)

# show all available evidence of base pairing
p <- PredictDBN(rna, "evidence") # all pairs with scores >= threshold
head(p) # matrix giving the pairs and their scores

# determine the score at every alignment position
p <- PredictDBN(rna, "scores") # score in the alignment
p["(", 122] # score for left-pairing at alignment position 122
p[")", 260] # score for right-pairing at alignment position 260

# find the scores individually for every sequence in the alignment
p <- PredictDBN(rna, "structures") # scores per sequence
p[[1]][, 1] # the scores for the first position in the first sequence
p[[2]][, 10] # the scores for the tenth position in the second sequence
# these positional scores can be used as shades of red, green, and blue:
BrowseSeqs(rna, patterns=p) # red = unpaired, green = left-pairing, blue = right
# positions in black are not part of the consensus secondary structure

# search for additional secondary structure between the consensus pairs
p <- PredictDBN(rna, "search") # scores per sequence after searching
BrowseSeqs(rna, patterns=p) # red = unpaired, green = left-pairing, blue = right
# note that "search" identified many more pairings than "structures"

## End(Not run)

```

---

PredictHEC

*Predict Protein Secondary Structure*


---

## Description

Predicts protein secondary structure based on the primary (amino acid) sequence using the GOR IV method (Garnier et al., 1996).

## Usage

```

PredictHEC(myAAStringSet,
           type = "states",
           windowSize = 8,
           background = c(H = -0.2, E = -0.6, C = 0),
           HEC_MI1 = NULL,
           HEC_MI2 = NULL)

```

## Arguments

`myAAStringSet` An AAStringSet object of sequences.

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| type       | Character string indicating the type of results desired. This should be (an unambiguous abbreviation of) one of "states", "scores", or "probabilities".   |
| windowSize | Either a single number specifying the number of residues to the left or right of the center position to use in the prediction or two numbers to use with HEC_MI1 and HEC_MI2, respectively.   |
| background | A named numeric vector with the background "scores" for each of the states, or a matrix with states as rows and columns giving the background for each sequence in myXStringSet. The background represents a calibrated prior on the relative propensity for each state, typically the log of the (normalized) state frequencies and possibly standardized to a minimum or maximum of zero. |
| HEC_MI1    | An array of dimensions 20 x W x N giving the mutual information for single residues, where W is at least 2*windowSize + 1 and N is the number of states in background.  |
| HEC_MI2    | An array of dimensions 20 x 20 x W x W x N giving the mutual information for pairs of residues, where W is at least 2*windowSize + 1 and N is the number of states in background.   |

### Details

The GOR (Garnier-Osguthorpe-Robson) method is an information-theory method for prediction of secondary structure based on the primary sequence of a protein. Version IV of the method makes state predictions based on the mutual information contained in single residues and pairs of residues within windowSize residues of the position being assigned. This approach is about 65% accurate for the traditional three states (i.e., H, E, and C), and is one of the more accurate methods for assigning secondary structure based on single sequences. This implementation of GOR IV does not use decision constants or the number of contiguous states when assigning the final state. Note that characters other than the standard 20 amino acids are not assigned a state.

### Value

If type is "states" (the default), then the output is a character vector with the secondary structure assignment for each residue in myAAStringSet.

Otherwise, the output is a list with one element for each sequence in myAAStringSet. Each list element contains a matrix of dimension N by the number of residues in the sequence, where N is the number of states in background. If type is "scores", then values in the matrix represent log-odds "scores". If type is "probabilities" then the values represent the normalized probabilities of the states at a position.

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### References

Garnier, J., Gibrat, J. F., & Robson, B. (1996). GOR method for predicting protein secondary structure from amino acid sequence. *Methods in Enzymology*, **266**, 540-553.

**See Also**

[HEC\\_MI1](#), [HEC\\_MI2](#), [PredictDBN](#)

**Examples**

```
fas <- system.file("extdata", "50S_ribosomal_protein_L2.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNAStrngSet(fas)
aa <- translate(dna)
hec <- PredictHEC(aa)
head(hec)
```

---

ReadDendrogram

*Read a Dendrogram from a Newick Formatted File*


---

**Description**

Reads a dendrogram object from a file in Newick (also known as New Hampshire) parenthetic format.

**Usage**

```
ReadDendrogram(file,
                convertBlanks = TRUE,
                internalLabels = TRUE,
                keepRoot = TRUE,
                quote = "'')
```

**Arguments**

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| file           | a connection object or a character string.  |
| convertBlanks  | Logical specifying whether to convert underscores in unquoted leaf labels to spaces.                        |
| internalLabels | Logical indicating whether to keep internal node labels as “edgetext” preceding the node in the dendrogram. |
| keepRoot       | Logical specifying whether to keep the root node (if one is present) as a dendrogram leaf.                  |
| quote          | Either a single or double quotation mark determining the character used quote labels.                       |

**Details**

ReadDendrogram will create a dendrogram object from a Newick formatted tree. Note that all edge lengths must be specified, but labels are optional. Leaves will be numbered by their labels in alphabetical order.

**Value**

An object of class dendrogram.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**See Also**

[Treeline](#), [WriteDendrogram](#)

**Examples**

```
tf <- tempfile()
dists <- matrix(c(0, 10, 20, 10, 0, 5, 20, 5, 0),
               nrow=3,
               dimnames=list(c("dog", "elephant", "horse")))
dend1 <- Treeline(myDistMatrix=dists, method="NJ", type="dendrogram")
WriteDendrogram(dend1, file=tf)

dend2 <- ReadDendrogram(tf)
layout(matrix(1:2))
plot(dend1, main="Dendrogram Written")
plot(dend2, main="Dendrogram Read")

unlink(tf)
```

---

RemoveGaps

*Remove Gap Characters in Sequences*

---

**Description**

Removes gaps ("- or "." characters) in a set of sequences, either deleting all gaps or only those shared by all sequences in the set.

**Usage**

```
RemoveGaps(myXStringSet,
           removeGaps = "all",
           includeMask = FALSE,
           processors = 1)
```

**Arguments**

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| myXStringSet | An AStringSet, DNAStrngSet, or RNAStrngSet object containing sequences.  |
| removeGaps   | Determines how gaps ("- or "." characters) are removed in the sequences. This should be (an unambiguous abbreviation of) one of "none", "all" or "common". |
| includeMask  | Logical specifying whether to consider the mask character ("+") as a gap.  |

processors      The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.

### Details

The `removeGaps` argument controls which gaps are removed in `myXStringSet`. Setting `removeGaps` to "all" will remove all gaps in the input sequences, whereas setting `removeGaps` to "common" will remove only gaps that exist in the same position in every sequence. Therefore, the latter method will leave gaps in place that are not shared by every sequence, requiring that the sequences in `myXStringSet` all be the same length (i.e., be aligned). Setting `removeGaps` to "none" will simply return `myXStringSet` unaltered.

### Value

An `XStringSet` of the same type as `myXStringSet`.

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### See Also

[AlignSeqs](#)

### Examples

```
dna <- DNASTringSet(c("ACT-G-", "AC--G-"))
dna
RemoveGaps(dna, "all")
RemoveGaps(dna, "common")
```

---

RESTRICTION\_ENZYMES      *Common Restriction Enzyme's Cut Sites*

---

### Description

A character vector of common restriction sites named by the restriction enzyme that cuts at each site. Sequence specificity is listed in 5' to 3' orientation based on the `IUPAC_CODE_MAP`. The cut site is either signified by a "/" for palindromic sites, or two numbers giving the position of the top and bottom cut positions relative to the site's 3'-end.

### Usage

```
data(RESTRICTION_ENZYMES)
```

### Format

The format is: `Named chr [1:224] "GACGT/C" "G/GTACC" "GT/MKAC" ... - attr(*, "names")= chr [1:224] "AatII" "Acc65I" "AccI" "AciI" ...`

**Source**

Restriction enzymes sold by [New England BioLabs](#).

**Examples**

```
data(RESTRICTION_ENZYMES)
RESTRICTION_ENZYMES
```

---

ScoreAlignment

*Score a Multiple Sequence Alignment*

---

**Description**

Calculates a score for a multiple sequence alignment based on either sum-of-pairs or sum-of-adjacent-pairs scoring.

**Usage**

```
ScoreAlignment(myXStringSet,
               method = "pairs",
               type = "sum",
               perfectMatch = 1,
               misMatch = 0,
               gapOpening = -7.5,
               gapExtension = -0.6,
               substitutionMatrix = NULL,
               structures = NULL,
               structureMatrix = NULL,
               includeTerminalGaps = FALSE,
               weight = 1)
```

**Arguments**

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| myXStringSet | An AStringSet, DNStringSet, or RNStringSet object of aligned sequences.  |
| method       | Character string indicating the method of scoring. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "pairs" for sum-of-pairs or "adjacent" for sum-of-adjacent-pairs. (See details section below.) |
| type         | Character string giving the type of result. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "sum" for the total score or "scores" for a vector with one score per site (column) in myXStringSet.  |
| perfectMatch | Numeric giving the reward for aligning two matching nucleotides in the alignment. Only used for DNStringSet or RNStringSet inputs.   |
| misMatch     | Numeric giving the cost for aligning two mismatched nucleotides in the alignment. Only used for DNStringSet or RNStringSet inputs.   |
| gapOpening   | Numeric giving the cost for opening and closing a gap in the alignment.  |



|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| gapExtension        | Numeric giving the cost for extending an open gap in the alignment.   |
| substitutionMatrix  | Either a substitution matrix representing the substitution scores for an alignment (in third-bits) or the name of the amino acid substitution matrix to use in alignment. The default (NULL) will use the perfectMatch and misMatch penalties for DNA/RNA or PFASUM50 for AA. |
| structures          | Either NULL (the default) or a list of matrices with one list element per sequence in myXStringSet.   |
| structureMatrix     | A structure matrix if structures are supplied, or NULL otherwise.   |
| includeTerminalGaps | Logical specifying whether or not to include terminal gaps ("- or "." characters on each end of the sequence) into the calculation of score.  |
| weight              | A numeric vector of weights for each sequence, or a single number implying equal weights.   |

### Details

Sum-of-pairs scoring is the standard way to judge whether a set of sequences are homologous. ScoreAlignment calculates the sum-of-pairs score for myXStringSet when method is "pairs". This score can also be used to compare among different alignments of the same sequences. If method is "adjacent" then the sum-of-adjacent-pairs scores is calculated, where each sequence is compared to the next sequence. Hence, the input order of sequences in myXStringSet matters when method is "adjacent".

Both scores are linearly related to the number of sequences in the alignment and the number of sites in the alignment. Therefore, it is possible to normalize the score by dividing by the width and length (minus 1) of the myXStringSet.

### Value

A single numeric score.

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### See Also

[AlignSeqs](#), [PFASUM](#)

### Examples

```
# small example
x <- DNASTringSet(c("C-G", "CTG", "C-G", "CTG"))
ScoreAlignment(x, method="pairs", gapOpening=-1) # +3 -1 +3 = 5
ScoreAlignment(x, method="adjacent", gapOpening=-1) # +3 -3 +3 = 3

# DNA alignment with the defaults
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Streptomyces_ITS_aligned.fas", package="DECIPHER")
```

```

dna <- readDNAStrngSet(fas)
dna # input alignment
ScoreAlignment(dna, method="pairs")
ScoreAlignment(dna, method="adjacent")

# provide a DNA substitution matrix for greater discerning power
sub <- matrix(c(1.5, -2.134, -0.739, -1.298,
  -2.134, 1.832, -2.462, 0.2,
  -0.739, -2.462, 1.522, -2.062,
  -1.298, 0.2, -2.062, 1.275),
  nrow=4,
  dimnames=list(DNA_BASES, DNA_BASES))
ScoreAlignment(dna, substitutionMatrix=sub)

# use structures with an amino acid alignment
fas <- system.file("extdata", "50S_ribosomal_protein_L2.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNAStrngSet(fas)
aa <- AlignTranslation(dna, type="AAStringSet")
structureMatrix <- matrix(c(0.187, -0.8, -0.873,
  -0.8, 0.561, -0.979,
  -0.873, -0.979, 0.221),
  nrow=3,
  dimnames=list(c("H", "E", "C"), c("H", "E", "C")))
ScoreAlignment(aa,
  structures=PredictHEC(aa, type="probabilities"),
  structureMatrix=structureMatrix)

```

---

SearchDB

---

*Obtain Specific Sequences from a Database*


---

## Description

Returns the set of sequences meeting the search criteria.

## Usage

```

SearchDB(dbFile,
  tblName = "Seqs",
  identifier = "",
  type = "XStringSet",
  limit = -1,
  replaceChar = NA,
  nameBy = "row_names",
  orderBy = "row_names",
  countOnly = FALSE,
  removeGaps = "none",
  quality = "Phred",
  clause = "",
  processors = 1,
  verbose = TRUE)

```

**Arguments**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| dbFile      | A database connection object or a character string specifying the path to a SQLite database file.  |
| tblName     | Character string specifying the table where the sequences are located.   |
| identifier  | Optional character string used to narrow the search results to those matching a specific identifier. If "" (the default) then all identifiers are selected.  |
| type        | The type of XStringSet (sequences) to return. This should be (an unambiguous abbreviation of) one of "XStringSet", "DNAStrngSet", "RNAStrngSet", "AAStringSet", "BStringSet", "QualityScaledXStringSet", "QualityScaledDNAStrngSet", "QualityScaledRNAStrngSet", "QualityScaledAAStringSet", or "QualityScaledBStringSet". If type is "XStringSet" or "QualityScaledXStringSet" then an attempt is made to guess the type of sequences based on their composition. |
| limit       | Number of results to display. The default (-1) does not limit the number of results.   |
| replaceChar | Optional character used to replace any characters of the sequence that are not present in the XStringSet's alphabet. Not applicable if type=="BStringSet". The default (NA) results in an error if an incompatible character exist. (See details section below.)   |
| nameBy      | Character string giving the column name for naming the XStringSet.   |
| orderBy     | Character string giving the column name for sorting the results. Defaults to the order of entries in the database. Optionally can be followed by "ASC" or "DESC" to specify ascending (the default) or descending order.   |
| countOnly   | Logical specifying whether to return only the number of sequences.   |
| removeGaps  | Determines how gaps ("- " or ". " characters) are removed in the sequences. This should be (an unambiguous abbreviation of) one of "none", "all" or "common".  |
| clause      | An optional character string to append to the query as part of a "where clause".   |
| quality     | The type of quality object to return if type is a QualityScaledXStringSet. This should be (an unambiguous abbreviation of) one of "Phred", "Solexa", or "Illumina". Note that recent versions of Illumina software provide "Phred" formatted quality scores.   |
| processors  | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.   |
| verbose     | Logical indicating whether to display queries as they are sent to the database.  |

**Details**

If type is "DNAStrngSet" then all U's are converted to T's before creating the DNAStrngSet, and vice-versa if type is "RNAStrngSet". All remaining characters not in the XStringSet's alphabet are converted to replaceChar or removed if replaceChar is "". Note that if replaceChar is NA (the default), it will result in an error when an unexpected character is found. Quality information is interpreted as PredQuality scores.

**Value**

An XStringSet or QualityScaledXStringSet with the sequences that meet the specified criteria. The names of the object correspond to the value in the nameBy column of the database.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**References**

ES Wright (2016) "Using DECIPHER v2.0 to Analyze Big Biological Sequence Data in R". The R Journal, **8(1)**, 352-359.

**See Also**

[Seqs2DB](#), [DB2Seqs](#)

**Examples**

```
if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {
  db <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.sqlite", package="DECIPHER")
  # get all sequences in the default table:
  dna <- SearchDB(db)
  # remove gaps from "Sphingomonadales" sequences:
  dna <- SearchDB(db, identifier="Sphingomonadales", removeGaps="all")
  # provide a more complex query:
  dna <- SearchDB(db, nameBy="description", orderBy="standard", removeGaps="common",
                 clause="nonstandard is 0")
}
```

---

SearchIndex

*Search an inverted index*

---

**Description**

Searches an inverted index for homologous sequences.

**Usage**

```
SearchIndex(pattern,
            invertedIndex,
            subject=NULL,
            minScore = NA,
            perPatternLimit=0,
            perSubjectLimit=1,
            scoreOnly = FALSE,
            sepCost = -0.9,
            gapCost = -3,
            maskRepeats = TRUE,
            maskLCRs = TRUE,
            dropScore = -10,
            correctBackground = TRUE,
            iterations = 0,
```

```

threshold = 1e-6,
processors = 1,
verbose = TRUE)

```

### Arguments

|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code>pattern</code>           | An <code>AAStringSet</code> , <code>DNAStringSet</code> , or <code>RNAStringSet</code> object of query (unaligned) sequences to use as the pattern that will be queried.  |
| <code>invertedIndex</code>     | An object of class <code>InvertedIndex</code> compatible with the class of <code>pattern</code> .   |
| <code>subject</code>           | The <code>XStringSet</code> object used to build the <code>invertedIndex</code> or <code>NULL</code> (the default) to skip the extension of k-mer matches. (See details section below.)   |
| <code>minScore</code>          | Numeric specifying the minimum score of hits to return. The default ( <code>NA</code> ) will automatically determine <code>minScore</code> from the size of the <code>invertedIndex</code> to correct for multiple testing (i.e., searching more than one subject sequence).  |
| <code>perPatternLimit</code>   | Numeric giving the maximum number of hits to return per pattern query. The default <code>perPatternLimit</code> ( <code>0</code> ) will cause the number of hits per pattern to be unlimited. Note, <code>perPatternLimit</code> is enforced after applying the <code>perSubjectLimit</code> .  |
| <code>perSubjectLimit</code>   | Numeric determining the maximum number of hits per subject to return for each pattern query. The default ( <code>1</code> ) is to return the top scoring hit per subject (target) sequence. Setting <code>perSubjectLimit</code> to <code>0</code> will cause the number of hits per subject to be unlimited. Note, <code>perSubjectLimit</code> is enforced before applying the <code>perPatternLimit</code> . |
| <code>scoreOnly</code>         | Logical determining whether to return only the hits and their scores or also the <code>Position</code> of k-mer hits.   |
| <code>sepCost</code>           | Numeric giving the penalty applied to sequence positions separating neighboring k-mer hits.   |
| <code>gapCost</code>           | Numeric providing the penalty applied to the minimum number of implied inserted or deleted positions (i.e., gaps) separating neighboring k-mer hits.  |
| <code>maskRepeats</code>       | Logical specifying whether to mask repeats when searching for hits.   |
| <code>maskLCRs</code>          | Logical indicating whether to mask low complexity regions when searching for hits.  |
| <code>dropScore</code>         | Numeric giving the decrease from maximum score required to stop extending k-mer matches. Only applicable when <code>subject</code> is not <code>NULL</code> . Values closer to zero will increase speed, potentially at the expense of sensitivity.   |
| <code>correctBackground</code> | Logical determining whether to correct the substitution matrix for the background distribution of letter frequencies on a per pattern basis. Alternatively, a positive numeric dictating the degree of compositional adjustment, with larger values resulting in less adjustment. The default ( <code>TRUE</code> ) uses an empirically determined value of <code>1e4</code> .                                  |
| <code>iterations</code>        | The number of profile-based iterations to perform, or <code>0</code> (the default) for none. Additional iterations make use of previous homologous matches to detect more remote homologs, but each iteration increases the search time.  |

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| threshold  | Numeric controlling profile inclusion when iterations is non-zero. Should be a positive number representing the score probability required for matches to be included in the profile. Values closer to zero will generate less diverse profiles when iterating. |
| processors | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |
| verbose    | Logical indicating whether to display progress.   |

### Details

The `invertedIndex` is searched for all unmasked k-mers shared with `pattern`, and the set of matches meeting the `minScore` is returned. By default, `SearchIndex` returns the top hundred scoring matches per subject (target) sequence (above `minScore`), but it is also possible to set (or remove) a limit on the number of pattern hits (`perPatternLimit`) or subject hits (`perSubjectLimit`) output for each pattern (query) sequence. A `data.frame` is returned with (by default) or without the `Position(s)` of matches, depending on the value of `scoreOnly`.

If the set of subject sequences is provided (i.e., not NULL), then k-mer matches are extended to increase search sensitivity. Extension proceeds to the left and right of each k-mer match until another match is encountered or the score falls below `dropScore`. This can decrease search speed, depending on `dropScore`, but may help to find more distant matches. Similarly, increasing the number of iterations can improve homolog detection at the expense of search speed. Each additional iteration will build a position-specific profile from significant matches and use this profile to find new hits. The Score of any hits is defined by their log-odds with respect to the pattern regardless of whether subject is provided or iterations is above zero.

### Value

A `data.frame` is returned with dimensions with columns `Pattern`, `Subject`, `Score`, and (optionally) `Position`. The `Pattern` is the index of the sequence in `pattern` and the `Subject` is the index of the sequence in the set used to build the `invertedIndex`. Each row contains a hit with `Score` meeting the `minScore`. If `scoreOnly` is FALSE (the default), the `Position` column contains a list of matrices with four rows: start/end positions of k-mer hits in the `Pattern` and start/end positions of k-mer hits in the `Subject`. The `data.frame` will always be order by ascending `Pattern` index.

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### See Also

[IndexSeqs](#), [AlignPairs](#)

### Examples

```
# import target sequences
fas <- system.file("extdata", "PlanctobacteriaNamedGenes.fas.gz", package="DECIPHER")
target <- readAAStringSet(fas)

# build an inverted index
```

```
index <- IndexSeqs(target, K=6)
index

# import query sequences
fas <- system.file("extdata", "50S_ribosomal_protein_L2.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNAStrngSet(fas)
query <- translate(dna)

# search the index, using the defaults
hits <- SearchIndex(query, index)
head(hits)
dim(hits) # number of hits

# search the index, requesting only the top hits
tophits <- SearchIndex(query, index, perPatternLimit=1)
head(tophits)
dim(tophits) # number of hits
tophits$Position[[1]] # query/target k-mer positions supporting first hit

# search the index, requesting the score for all hits
allhits <- SearchIndex(query, index, perSubjectLimit=0, scoreOnly=TRUE)
head(allhits)
dim(allhits) # number of hits

# include the target sequences to improve sensitivity (but slower)
morehits <- SearchIndex(query, index, target)
head(morehits)
dim(morehits) # number of hits

# further improve sensitivity with profile-based iterations
morehits <- SearchIndex(query, index, target, iterations=1)
head(morehits)
dim(morehits) # number of hits
```

---

Seqs2DB

*Add Sequences from Text File to Database*

---

## Description

Adds sequences to a database.

## Usage

```
Seqs2DB(seqs,
        type,
        dbFile,
        identifier,
        tblName = "Seqs",
        chunkSize = 1e7,
        replaceTbl = FALSE,
```

```

fields = c(accession = "ACCESSION", organism = "ORGANISM"),
processors = 1,
verbose = TRUE,
...)
```

### Arguments

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| seqs       | A connection object or a character string specifying the file path to the file containing the sequences, an XStringSet object if type is XStringSet, or a QualityScaledXStringSet object if type is QualityScaledXStringSet. Files compressed with gzip, bzip2, xz, or lzma compression are automatically detected and decompressed during import. Full URL paths (e.g., "http://" or "ftp://") to uncompressed text files or gzip compressed text files can also be used.                          |
| type       | The type of the sequences (seqs) being imported. This should be (an unambiguous abbreviation of) one of "FASTA", "FASTQ", "GenBank", "XStringSet", or "QualityScaledXStringSet".  |
| dbFile     | A database connection object or a character string specifying the path to a SQLite database file. If the tblName does not exist then a new table is created (and file, if needed).  |
| identifier | Character string specifying the "id" to give the imported sequences in the database.  |
| tblName    | Character string specifying the table in which to add the sequences.  |
| chunkSize  | Number of characters to read at a time.   |
| replaceTbl | Logical indicating whether to overwrite the entire table in the database. If FALSE (the default) then the sequences are appended to any already existing in the tblName. If TRUE the entire table is dropped, removing any existing sequences before adding any new sequences.  |
| fields     | Named character vector providing the fields to import from a "GenBank" formatted file as text columns in the database (not applicable for other "type"s). The default is to import the "ACCESSION" field as a column named "accession" and the "ORGANISM" field as a column named "organism". Other uppercase fields, such as "LOCUS" or "VERSION", can be specified in similar manner. Note that the "DEFINITION" field is automatically imported as a column named "description" in the database. |
| processors | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.  |
| verbose    | Logical indicating whether to display each query as it is sent to the database.   |
| ...        | Further arguments to be passed directly to <a href="#">Codec</a> for compressing sequence information.  |

### Details

Sequences are imported into the database in chunks of lines specified by chunkSize. The sequences can then be identified by searching the database for the identifier provided. Sequences are added to the database verbatim, so that no sequence information is lost when the sequences are exported from the database. The sequence (record) names are recorded into a column named "description" in the database.



**Value**

The total number of sequences in the database table is returned after import.

**Warning**

If `replaceTbl` is `TRUE` then any sequences already in the table are overwritten, which is equivalent to dropping the entire table.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**References**

ES Wright (2016) "Using DECIPHER v2.0 to Analyze Big Biological Sequence Data in R". The R Journal, **8(1)**, 352-359.

**See Also**

[BrowseDB](#), [SearchDB](#), [DB2Seqs](#)

**Examples**

```
if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {
  gen <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.gen", package="DECIPHER")
  dbConn <- dbConnect(dbDriver("SQLite"), ":memory:")
  Seqs2DB(gen, "GenBank", dbConn, "Bacteria")
  BrowseDB(dbConn)
  dna <- SearchDB(dbConn, nameBy="description")
  dbDisconnect(dbConn)
}
```

---

StaggerAlignment

*Produce a Staggered Alignment*

---

**Description**

Staggers overlapping characters in a multiple sequence alignment that are better explained by multiple insertions than multiple deletions.

**Usage**

```
StaggerAlignment(myXStringSet,
                 tree = NULL,
                 threshold = 3,
                 fullLength = FALSE,
                 processors = 1,
                 verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| myXStringSet | An AStringSet, DNStringSet, or RNStringSet object of aligned sequences.  |
| tree         | A bifurcating dendrogram representing the evolutionary relationships between sequences, such as that created by <a href="#">Treeline</a> . The root should be the topmost node of the tree. The default (NULL) will automatically infer a tree from myXStringSet.  |
| threshold    | Numeric giving the ratio of insertions to deletions that must be met to stagger a region of the alignment. Specifically, the number of insertions divided by deletions must be less than threshold to stagger.   |
| fullLength   | Logical specifying whether the sequences are full-length (TRUE), or terminal gaps should be treated as missing data (FALSE, the default). Either a single logical, a vector with one logical per sequence, or a list with right and left components containing logicals for the right and left sides of the alignment. |
| processors   | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.   |
| verbose      | Logical indicating whether to display progress.  |

**Details**

Multiple sequence aligners typically maximize true homologies at the expense of increased false homologies. StaggerAlignment creates a “staggered alignment” which separates regions of the alignment that are likely not homologous into separate regions. This re-balances the trade-off between true positives and false positives by decreasing the number of false homologies at the loss of some true homologies. The resulting alignment is less aesthetically pleasing because it is widened by the introduction of many gaps. However, in an evolutionary sense a staggered alignment is more correct because each aligned position represents a hypothesis about evolutionary events: overlapping characters between any two sequences represent positions common to their ancestor sequence that may have evolved through substitution.

The single parameter threshold controls the degree of staggering. Its value represents the ratio of insertions to deletions that must be crossed in order to stagger a region. A threshold of 1 would mean any region that could be better explained by separate insertions than deletions should be staggered. A higher value for threshold makes it more likely to stagger, and vice-versa. A very high value would conservatively stagger most regions with gaps, resulting in few false homologies but also fewer true homologies. The default value (3) is intended to remove more false homologies than it eliminates in true homologies. It may be preferable to tailor the threshold depending on the purpose of the alignment, as some downstream procedures (such as tree building) may be more or less sensitive to false homologies.

**Value**

An XStringSet of aligned sequences.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**See Also**

[AdjustAlignment](#), [AlignSeqs](#), [Treeline](#)

**Examples**

```
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNASTringSet(fas)
dna <- RemoveGaps(dna)
alignedDNA <- AlignSeqs(dna)
staggerDNA <- StaggerAlignment(alignedDNA)
BrowseSeqs(staggerDNA, highlight=1)
```

---

Synteny

*Synteny blocks and hits*

---

**Description**

Syntenic blocks are DNA segments composed of conserved hits occurring in the same order on two sequences. The two sequences are typically chromosomes of different species that are hypothesized to contain homologous regions. Class "Synteny" provides objects and functions for storing and viewing syntenic blocks and hits that are shared between sequences.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'Synteny'
pairs(x,
      bounds = TRUE,
      boxBlocks = FALSE,
      labels = abbreviate(rownames(x), 9),
      gap = 0.5,
      line.main = 3,
      cex.labels = NULL,
      font.labels = 1,
      ...)

## S3 method for class 'Synteny'
plot(x,
     colorBy = 1,
     colorRamp = colorRampPalette(c("#FCF9EE", "#FFF272",
                                   "#FFAC28", "#EC5931",
                                   "#EC354D", "#0D0887")),
     barColor = "#CCCCCC",
     barSides = ifelse(nrow(x) < 100, TRUE, FALSE),
     horizontal = TRUE,
     labels = abbreviate(rownames(x), 9),
     cex.labels = NULL,
     width = 0.7,
```

```

        scaleBar = TRUE,
        ...)

## S3 method for class 'Synteny'
as.dist(m,
        diag = FALSE,
        upper = FALSE)

## S3 method for class 'Synteny'
print(x,
      quote = FALSE,
      right = TRUE,
      ...)

```

### Arguments

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>x</code>           | An object of class <code>Synteny</code> .   |
| <code>bounds</code>      | Logical specifying whether to plot sequence boundaries as horizontal or vertical lines.   |
| <code>boxBlocks</code>   | Logical indicating whether to draw a rectangle around hits belonging to the same block of synteny.  |
| <code>colorBy</code>     | Numeric giving the index of a reference sequence, or a character string indicating to color by “neighbor”, “frequency”, or “none”. (See details section below.)   |
| <code>colorRamp</code>   | A function that will return <code>n</code> colors when given a number <code>n</code> . Examples are <code>rainbow</code> , <code>heat.colors</code> , <code>terrain.colors</code> , <code>cm.colors</code> , or (the default) <code>colorRampPalette</code> .   |
| <code>barColor</code>    | Character string giving the background color of each bar.   |
| <code>barSides</code>    | Logical indicating whether to draw black lines along the long-sides of each bar.  |
| <code>horizontal</code>  | Logical indicating whether to plot the sequences horizontally ( <code>TRUE</code> ) or vertically ( <code>FALSE</code> ).   |
| <code>labels</code>      | Character vector providing names corresponding to each “identifier” for labels on the diagonal.   |
| <code>width</code>       | Numeric giving the fractional width of each bar between zero and one.   |
| <code>scaleBar</code>    | Logical controlling whether a scale bar is drawn when <code>colorBy</code> is “frequency”. The scale bar displays the mapping between color and the level of sequence conservation. Not applicable when <code>colorBy</code> is a value other than “frequency”. |
| <code>gap</code>         | Distance between subplots, in margin lines.   |
| <code>line.main</code>   | If <code>main</code> is specified, <code>line.main</code> provides the <code>line</code> argument to <code>mtext</code> .   |
| <code>cex.labels</code>  | Magnification of the labels.  |
| <code>font.labels</code> | Font of labels on the diagonal.   |
| <code>m</code>           | An object of class <code>Synteny</code> to be converted into a <code>dist</code> object.  |
| <code>diag</code>        | Logical determining whether to print the diagonal of the distance matrix.   |
| <code>upper</code>       | Logical determining whether to print the upper triangle of the distance matrix.   |
| <code>quote</code>       | Logical indicating whether to print the output surrounded by quotes.  |

`right` Logical specifying whether to right align strings.

`...` Other graphical parameters for pairs or plot, including: `main`, `cex.main`, `font.main`, and `oma`. Other arguments for `print`, including `print.gap` and `max`.

## Details

Objects of class `Synteny` are stored as square matrices of list elements with `dimnames` giving the “identifier” of the corresponding sequences. The synteny matrix can be separated into three parts: along, above, and below the diagonal. Each list element along the diagonal contains an integer vector with the width of the sequence(s) belonging to that “identifier”. List elements above the diagonal (column  $j >$  row  $i$ ) each contain a matrix with “hits” corresponding to matches between sequences  $i$  and  $j$ . List elements below the diagonal each contain a matrix with “blocks” of synteny between sequences  $j$  and  $i$ .

The `pairs` method creates a scatterplot matrix from a `Synteny` object. Dot plots above the diagonal show hits between identifier  $i$  and  $j$ , where forward hits are colored in black, and hits to the reverse strand of identifier  $j$  are colored in red. Plots below the diagonal show blocks of synteny colored by their score, from green (highest scoring) to blue to magenta (lowest scoring).

The `plot` method displays a bar view of the sequences in the same order as the input object (`x`). The coloring scheme of each bar is determined by the `colorBy` argument, and the color palette is set by `colorRamp`. When `colorBy` is an index, the sequences are colored according to regions of shared homology with the specified reference sequence (by default 1). If `colorBy` is “neighbor” then shared syntenic blocks are connected between neighboring sequences. If `colorBy` is “frequency” then positions in each sequence are colored based on the degree of conservation with the other sequences. In each case, regions that have no correspondence in the other sequence(s) are colored `barColor`.

The `as.dist` method returns an object of class `dist` containing distances between each pair of sequences in a `Synteny` object. Distance is defined as one minus the hit coverage for the shorter of the two sequences in the pair.

## Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

## See Also

[AlignSynteny](#), [FindSynteny](#)

## Examples

```
if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {
  # a small example:
  dbConn <- dbConnect(dbDriver("SQLite"), ":memory:")
  s1 <- DNASTringSet("ACTAGACCCAGACCGATAAACGGACTGGACAAG")
  s3 <- reverseComplement(s1)
  s2 <- c(s1, s3)
  Seqs2DB(c(c(s1, s2), s3),
          "XStringSet",
          dbConn,
```

```

      c("s1", "s2", "s2", "s3"))
syn <- FindSynteny(dbConn, minScore=1)
syn # Note: > 100% hits because of sequence reuse across blocks
pairs(syn, boxBlocks=TRUE)
plot(syn)
dbDisconnect(dbConn)

# a larger example:
db <- system.file("extdata", "Influenza.sqlite", package="DECIPHER")
synteny <- FindSynteny(db, minScore=50)
class(synteny) # 'Synteny'
synteny

# accessing parts
i <- 1
j <- 2
synteny[i, i][[1]] # width of sequences in i
synteny[j, j][[1]] # width of sequences in j
head(synteny[i, j][[1]]) # hits between i & j
synteny[j, i][[1]] # blocks between i & j

# plotting
pairs(synteny) # dot plots
pairs(synteny, boxBlocks=TRUE) # boxes around blocks

plot(synteny) # bar view colored by position in genome 1
plot(synteny, barColor="#268FD6") # emphasize missing regions
plot(synteny, "frequency") # most regions are shared by all
plot(synteny, "frequency", colorRamp=rainbow) # change the colors
plot(synteny, "neighbor") # connect neighbors
}

```

---

Taxa

*Taxa training and testing objects*


---

## Description

Taxonomic classification is the process of assigning an organism a label that is part of a taxonomic hierarchy (e.g., Phylum, Class, Order, Family, Genus). Here, labels are assigned based on an organism's DNA or RNA sequence at a rank level determined by the classification's confidence. Class Taxa provides objects and functions for storing and viewing training and testing objects used in taxonomic classification.

## Usage

```

## S3 method for class 'Taxa'
plot(x,
      y = NULL,
      showRanks = TRUE,

```

```

        n = NULL,
        ...)

## S3 method for class 'Taxa'
print(x,
      ...)

## S3 method for class 'Taxa'
x[i, j, threshold]

```

### Arguments

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| x         | An object of class Taxa with subclass Train or Test.   |
| y         | An (optional) object of class Taxa with the opposite subclass as x.  |
| showRanks | Logical specifying whether to show all rank levels when plotting an object of class Taxa and subclass Test. If TRUE (the default), then ranks are shown as (colored) concentric rings with radial lines delimiting taxa boundaries.  |
| n         | Numeric vector giving the frequency of each classification if x or y is an object of subclass Test, or the default (NULL) to treat all classifications as occurring once. Typically, specifying n is useful when the classifications represent varying numbers of observations, e.g., when only unique sequences were originally classified. |
| ...       | Other optional parameters.   |
| i         | Numeric or character vector of indices to extract from objects of class Taxa with subclass Test.   |
| j         | Numeric or character vector of rank levels to extract from objects of class Taxa with subclass Test.   |
| threshold | Numeric specifying the confidence threshold at which to truncate the output taxonomic classifications. Note that threshold must be higher than the original for the classifications to change.   |

### Details

Objects of class Taxa are stored as lists, and can have either subclass Train or Test. The function LearnTaxa returns an object of subclass Train, while the function IdTaxa can return an object of class Test.

Training objects are built from a set of reference sequences with known taxonomic classifications. List elements contain information required by IdTaxa for assigning a classification to test sequences.

Testing objects can be generated by IdTaxa from a Training object and a set of test sequences. Each list element contains the taxon, confidence, and (optionally) rank name of the taxonomic assignment.

The information stored in Taxa can be visualized with the plot function or displayed with print. Only objects of subclass Train can be subsetted without losing their class.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**See Also**

[LearnTaxa](#), [IdTaxa](#)

**Examples**

```
data("TrainingSet_16S")
plot(TrainingSet_16S)

# import test sequences
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNAStringSet(fas)

# remove any gaps in the sequences
dna <- RemoveGaps(dna)

# classify the test sequences
ids <- IdTaxa(dna, TrainingSet_16S, strand="top")
ids

plot(ids) # plot all rank levels
plot(ids[, 1:4]) # plot the first rank levels
plot(ids[j=c("rootrank", "class", "genus")]) # plot specific rank levels
plot(ids[threshold=70]) # plot high confidence classifications
```

---

TerminalChar

*Determine the Number of Terminal Characters*

---

**Description**

Counts the number of terminal characters for every sequence in an XStringSet. Terminal characters are defined as a specific character repeated at the beginning and end of a sequence.

**Usage**

```
TerminalChar(myXStringSet,
             char = "")
```

**Arguments**

**myXStringSet** An XStringSet object of sequences.

**char** A single character giving the terminal character to count, or an empty character ("") indicating to count both gap ("-") and unknown (".") characters.



**Value**

A matrix containing the results for each sequence in its respective row. The first column contains the number of leading char, the second contains the number of trailing char, and the third contains the total number of characters in-between.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**See Also**

[IdLengths](#)

**Examples**

```
fas <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNASTringSet(fas)
t <- TerminalChar(dna)
```

---

TileSeqs

*Form a Set of Tiles for Each Group of Sequences.*

---

**Description**

Creates a set of tiles that represent each group of sequences in the database for downstream applications.

**Usage**

```
TileSeqs(dbFile,
         tblName = "Seqs",
         identifier = "",
         minLength = 26,
         maxLength = 27,
         maxTilePermutations = 10,
         minCoverage = 0.9,
         add2tbl = FALSE,
         processors = 1,
         verbose = TRUE,
         ...)
```

**Arguments**

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| dbFile  | A database connection object or a character string specifying the path to a SQLite database file. |
| tblName | Character string specifying the table of sequences to use for forming tiles.                      |

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <code>identifier</code>          | Optional character string used to narrow the search results to those matching a specific identifier. If "" then all identifiers are selected.  |
| <code>minLength</code>           | Integer providing the minimum number of nucleotides in each tile. Typically the same or slightly less than <code>maxLength</code> .  |
| <code>maxLength</code>           | Integer providing the maximum number of nucleotides in each tile. Tiles are designed primarily for this length, which should ideally be slightly greater than the maximum length of oligos used in downstream functions.                             |
| <code>maxTilePermutations</code> | Integer specifying the maximum number of tiles in each target site.  |
| <code>minCoverage</code>         | Numeric providing the fraction of coverage that is desired for each target site in the group. For example, a <code>minCoverage</code> of 0.9 request that additional tiles are added until 90% of the group is represented by the tile permutations. |
| <code>add2tbl</code>             | Logical or a character string specifying the table name in which to add the result.  |
| <code>processors</code>          | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors.   |
| <code>verbose</code>             | Logical indicating whether to display progress.  |
| <code>...</code>                 | Additional arguments to be passed directly to SearchDB.  |

## Details

TileSeqs will create a set of overlapping tiles representing each target site in an alignment of sequences. The most common tile permutations are added until the desired minimum group coverage is obtained. The `dbFile` is assumed to contain `DNAStrngSet` sequences (any U's are converted to T's).

Target sites with one more more tiles not meeting a set of requirements are marked with `misprime` equals TRUE. Requirements include minimum group coverage, minimum length, and maximum length. Additionally, tiles are required not to contain more than four runs of a single base or four di-nucleotide repeats.

## Value

A `data.frame` with a row for each tile, and multiple columns of information. The `row_names` column gives the row number. The `start`, `end`, `start_aligned`, and `end_aligned` columns provide positioning of the tile in a consensus sequence formed from the group. The column `misprime` is a logical specifying whether the tile meets the specified constraints. The columns `width` and `id` indicate the tile's length and group of origin, respectively.

The `coverage` field gives the fraction of sequences containing the tile in the group that encompass the tile's start and end positions in the alignment, whereas `groupCoverage` contains the fraction of all sequences in the group containing a tile at their respective target site. For example, if only a single sequence out of 10 has information (no gap) in the first alignment position, then `coverage` would be 100% (1.0), while `groupCoverage` would be 10% (0.1).

The final column, `target_site`, provides the sequence of the tile.

**Note**

If `add2tbl` is `TRUE` then the tiles will be added to the database table that currently contains the sequences used for tiling. The added tiles may cause interference when querying a table of sequences. Therefore, it is recommended to add the tiles to their own table, for example, by using `add2tbl="Tiles"`.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**See Also**

[DesignPrimers](#)

**Examples**

```
if (require("RSQLite", quietly=TRUE)) {  
  db <- system.file("extdata", "Bacteria_175seqs.sqlite", package="DECIPHER")  
  tiles <- TileSeqs(db, identifier="Sphingomonadales")  
}
```

---

TrainingSet\_16S

*Training Set for Classification of 16S rRNA Gene Sequences*

---

**Description**

A pre-trained classifier for 16S rRNA gene sequences generated by [LearnTaxa](#).

**Usage**

```
data("TrainingSet_16S")
```

**Format**

A training set of class 'Taxa' \* K-mer size: 8 \* Number of rank levels: 10 \* Total number of sequences: 2472 \* Number of taxonomic groups: 2472 \* Number of problem groups: 5 \* Number of problem sequences: 8

**Details**

The original training sequences were pruned to a maximum of one sequence per group, as described in the 'Classifying Sequences' vignette.

**Note**

This 16S rRNA training set is provided for illustrative purposes only. It is highly recommended to use a more comprehensive training set when classifying real sequences. Examples of comprehensive training sets can be found at <http://DECIPHER.codes/Download.html>.

**Source**

Derived from version 16 of the RDP Training Set (<http://rdp.cme.msu.edu>) based on Bergey's Manual.

**References**

Whitman, W.B., Goodfellow, M., Kampfer, P., Busse, H.-J., Trujillo, M.E., Ludwig, W. & Suzuki, K.-i. (eds., 2012). Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology, 2nd ed., Springer-Verlag, New York, NY.

**Examples**

```
data(TrainingSet_16S)
TrainingSet_16S
plot(TrainingSet_16S)
```

---

Treeline

*Construct a Phylogenetic Tree*

---

**Description**

Builds a phylogenetic tree from a set of sequences or distance matrix.

**Usage**

```
Treeline(myXStringSet = NULL,
         myDistMatrix = NULL,
         method = "ME",
         type = "dendrogram",
         cutoff = -Inf,
         showPlot = FALSE,
         standardDeviation = 0.2,
         fracRandomNNIs = 0.4,
         goalPercent = NA,
         tolerance = 5e-5,
         minIterations = 40,
         maxIterations = 400,
         maxTime = Inf,
         root = 0,
         collapse = -1,
         reconstruct = FALSE,
         costMatrix = NULL,
         model = MODELS,
         informationCriterion = "AICc",
         quadrature = FALSE,
         processors = 1,
         verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| myXStringSet      | An AStringSet, DNAStrngSet, or RNAStrngSet. Required if (a) not supplying myDistMatrix, (b) method is "ML", (c) method is "MP", or (d) reconstruct is not FALSE.   |
| myDistMatrix      | A symmetric $N \times N$ distance matrix with the values of dissimilarity between $N$ sequences or an object of class 'dist'. If NULL (the default), myDistMatrix will be automatically determined from myXStringSet based on the distance between sequences using the DistanceMatrix function and the model (if specified). If not NULL, myDistMatrix is used to construct the initial tree, even when method is "ML" or "MP". If method is "ME", myDistMatrix determines the branch lengths and, therefore, overall tree length that is optimized. Missing values (i.e., NA) in myDistMatrix are imputed using the ultrametric method described by Makarenkov and Lapointe (2004). |
| method            | The phylogenetic method to be used. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "ME" for (balanced) minimum evolution (the default), "ML" for maximum likelihood, "MP" for maximum parsimony, "NJ" for neighbor joining, "complete" for complete-linkage, "single" for single-linkage, "UPGMA" for "unweighted pair group method with arithmetic mean", or "WPGMA" for "weighted pair group method with arithmetic mean". (See details section below.)  |
| type              | Character string indicating the type of output desired. This should be (an abbreviation of) one of "dendrogram" (the default), "clusters", or "both". (See value section below.)   |
| cutoff            | A vector with the maximum edge length separating the sequences in the same cluster. A negative value (the default) will prevent clustering. Multiple cutoffs may be provided in ascending or descending order. (See details section below.)  |
| showPlot          | Logical specifying whether or not to plot the resulting dendrogram.  |
| standardDeviation | Numeric determining the extent to which cophenetic distances are perturbed prior to constructing the initial candidate tree in each iteration. Only applicable if method is "ME", "ML", or "MP".   |
| fracRandomNNIs    | Numeric giving the fraction of stochastic nearest neighbor interchanges to perform when perturbing the tree to develop a new candidate tree in each iteration after the first. Only applicable if method is "ME", "ML", or "MP".   |
| goalPercent       | Numeric providing the target percent difference in score relative to the best observed tree after optimizing the candidate tree through nearest neighbor interchanges (NNIs). If goalPercent is not NA (the default), fracRandomNNIs is iteratively adjusted to reach goalPercent relative score. Only applicable if method is "ME", "ML", or "MP".  |
| tolerance         | Numeric determining the relative convergence tolerance. Iterating will cease when the relative score has changed by less than tolerance for minIterations and is expected to change by less than tolerance per iteration. Only applicable if method is "ME", "ML", or "MP".  |
| minIterations     | Integer indicating the minimum number of iterations of optimization to perform. Lower values will result in faster convergence but may insufficiently explore tree space. Only applicable if method is "ME", "ML", or "MP".  |

|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| maxIterations        | Integer indicating the maximum number iterations of optimization to perform. More iterations will potentially better search tree space at the expense of added runtime. Only applicable if method is "ME", "ML", or "MP".  |
| maxTime              | Numeric giving the maximum number of hours the algorithm is allowed to run before returning a result. Once maxTime is reached, the algorithm will proceed at the next available opportunity, even if minIterations is unmet. Only applicable if method is "ME", "ML", or "MP". Note that setting a time limit may prevent reproducibility when using a random number seed.   |
| root                 | Integer specifying the index of the outgroup sequence or 0 (the default) to mid-point root the dendrogram.   |
| collapse             | Numeric controlling which internal edges of the tree are removed by collapsing their nodes. If collapse is zero then nodes at the same height will be collapsed to a single node, resulting in a multifurcating tree. When collapse is greater than zero, nodes that are within collapse difference in height are made into a single node. A value of collapse less than zero (the default) will ensure that the dendrogram is purely bifurcating. Note that collapse has no effect on cluster numbers or cutoff.  |
| reconstruct          | Logical or numeric determining whether to perform ancestral state reconstruction when myXStringSet is specified. If TRUE, ancestral character states are determined at internal nodes of the dendrogram and provided as a "state" attribute. Ancestral states are determined as the most parsimonious state according to the "costMatrix", unless method is "ML", in which case ancestral states are determined as those with the highest (marginal) likelihood. A numeric value between zero and one (exclusive) can be provided when method is "ML" to require that fraction of the state's likelihood to be greater than that of all alternative states, otherwise a more ambiguous degeneracy code is used. Only applicable if type is "dendrogram" (the default) or "both". |
| costMatrix           | Either NULL (the default) or a symmetric matrix setting the penalties used in Sankoff parsimony. The default (NULL) will apply a cost of 1 for standard character state changes and 0 otherwise (i.e., equivalent to Fitch parsimony). If a matrix then the states are taken from its row or column names. Only applicable if method is "MP", or reconstruct is TRUE and method is not "ML".   |
| model                | One or more of the available MODELS of evolution provided as a character vector or list with components 'Protein' and/or 'Nucleotide' if method is "ML". Automatic model selection based on the informationCriterion will be performed for "ML" if more than one model is provided. For "ME", if myDistMatrix is NULL, a single model of evolution can be specified for generating the distance matrix from myXStringSet.  |
| informationCriterion | Character string specifying which information criterion to use in automatic model selection when method is "ML". Must be (an abbreviation of) either "AICc" or "BIC". The best model is automatically chosen based on the informationCriterion calculated from the likelihood and the sample size (defined as the average number of sites for sequences in myXStringSet). Only applicable if method is "ML".   |
| quadrature           | Logical determining whether to use the Laguerre quadrature or equal-sized bins when discretizing the rate distribution across sites when method is "ML". The default (FALSE) is to use equal-sized bins for direct comparison among likelihoods  |

|            |   |
|------------|---|
|            | computed by other programs, although the Laguerre quadrature offers a modest improvement in accuracy for the same number of rates (Felsenstein, 2001).  |
| processors | The number of processors to use, or NULL to automatically detect and use all available processors. Note, the number of processors in some steps is automatically selected between 1 and processors to optimize performance. |
| verbose    | Logical indicating whether to display progress.   |

## Details

Treeline builds a phylogenetic tree using either `myXStringSet` and/or `myDistMatrix`. The output is either a dendrogram and/or `data.frame` containing cluster numbers.

Multiple methods of tree building are supported:

(1) Minimum evolution: ME iteratively minimizes the (balanced) tree length according to a distance matrix, as described by Pauplin (2000). According to Gonnet (2012) and Spirin *et al.* (2024), the ME criterion performs best overall on benchmarks constructed from real genes and is therefore the default method. ME is also the fastest of the optimized methods. Branch lengths are determined from `myDistMatrix` or, if missing (NULL), calculated from the hamming distances between sequences in `myXStringSet` unless a model is specified.

(2) Maximum likelihood: ML iteratively maximizes the likelihood of the tree and any free model parameters given aligned sequences (`myXStringSet`). One or more MODELS of sequence evolution must be specified, of which the best model is automatically selected based on the `informationCriterion`. The ML criterion performs well on benchmarks constructed from real genes when given sufficiently long and variable alignments. Branch lengths are in units of substitution per site.

(3) Maximum parsimony: MP iteratively maximizes the parsimony of a tree given aligned sequences (`myXStringSet`) and a `costMatrix`. The default cost matrix is binary, corresponding to Fitch (1971) parsimony. The `costMatrix` often has a large influence over the result, and more biologically reasonable cost matrices will likely improve the resulting tree. See the examples below for non-uniform cost matrices. Here, branch lengths are in units of the average cost per site.

(4) Neighbor-joining: NJ uses the Neighbor-Joining method proposed by Saitou and Nei (1987), which creates an approximate minimum evolution tree from a distance matrix (`myDistMatrix`). The NJ criterion is a greedy heuristic approach to minimum evolution, and can be considered a less accurate alternative to ME. Notably, NJ is faster than ME for moderate numbers of sequences, since it only computes a single tree, but is slower than ME for large numbers of sequences due to its cubic time complexity.

(5) Ultrametric: The method `complete` assigns clusters using complete-linkage so that sequences in the same cluster are no more than `cutoff` distance apart. The method `single` assigns clusters using single-linkage so that sequences in the same cluster are within `cutoff` of at least one other sequence in the same cluster. UPGMA and WPGMA assign clusters using average-linkage which is a compromise between the sensitivity of complete-linkage clustering to outliers and the tendency of single-linkage clustering to connect distant relatives that are not closely related. UPGMA produces an unweighted tree, where each leaf contributes equally to the average edge lengths, whereas WPGMA produces a weighted result.

For methods "ME", "ML", and "MP", candidate trees are iteratively optimized through rounds of nearest neighbor interchanges ("climbs") followed by fusion of remaining differences to the best observed tree ("grafts"). Candidate trees are generated with a heuristic variant of neighbor joining after perturbing the best observed tree's cophenetic distance matrix, followed by stochastic NNIs

if `fracRandomNNIs` is greater than 0. The value of `fracRandomNNIs` is adaptively varied to reach `goalPercent` relative score on average after optimization via climbs, unless `goalPercent` is NA (the default). This process results in gradual improvement until reaching a best tree, which is returned if insufficient score improvement is made for `minIterations`, unless `maxIterations` or `maxTime` is reached.

The objective of optimization is to find the global optimum, but it is necessary to set a random seed for exact reproducibility since optimization is stochastic and may only find a local optimum. Setting `maxTime` may prevent reproducibility if iteration terminates prior to reaching convergence or `maxIterations`. Also, not all math operations (e.g., logarithm) have standard implementations across platforms, so reproducibility is not guaranteed on different machines. The results are not necessarily significant even if they are reproducible, and it possible to use bootstrapping to gauge support for different partitions. When `method` is "ML", `aBayes` support values are provided that are a reasonable representation of support.

The returned dendrogram has information stored in its attributes, which can be accessed with the `attributes` or `attr` functions. For maximum likelihood trees, the edges have a "probability" attribute representing the `aBayes` support probability (Anisimova, 2011). If `reconstruct` is not FALSE, each edge of the tree will have a "state" attribute representing the node's predicted ancestral state. Also, when `reconstruct` is not FALSE, maximum likelihood trees will provide the likelihoods at each site and other methods will provide a state transition matrix.

When non-negative `cutoff(s)` are supplied, Treeline will assign clusters based on edge lengths in the tree. Multiple cutoffs may be provided in sorted order. If the cutoffs are provided in *descending* order then clustering at each new value of `cutoff` is continued within the prior `cutoff`'s clusters. In this way clusters at lower values of `cutoff` are completely contained within their umbrella clusters at higher values of `cutoff`. This is useful for defining taxonomy, where groups need to be hierarchically nested. If multiple cutoffs are provided in *ascending* order then clustering at each level of `cutoff` is independent of the prior level.

### Value

If `type` is "dendrogram" (the default), then a tree of class `dendrogram` is returned with attributes including pertinent information. If `type` is "clusters", then a `data.frame` is returned with dimensions  $N * M$ , where each one of  $N$  sequences is assigned to a cluster at the  $M$ -level of `cutoff`. If `type` is "both" then a list is returned containing both the "clusters" and "dendrogram" outputs.

### Note

Cophenetic distance between leaves of the dendrogram is often defined as the sum of branch lengths separating the leaves, also known as the patristic distance. This is the typical phylogenetic interpretation but different than that for dendrograms produced by `hclust` where leaves are merged at a height equal to their cophenetic distance. Hence, always use `Cophenetic` (rather than `cophenetic`) to compute cophenetic distances if the length between leaves is desired.

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>



## References

- Anisimova M., *et al.* (2011) Survey of branch support methods demonstrates accuracy, power, and robustness of fast likelihood-based approximation schemes. *Syst Biol.*, **60**(5), 685-99.
- Felsenstein, J. (1981) Evolutionary trees from DNA sequences: a maximum likelihood approach. *Journal of Molecular Evolution*, **17**(6), 368-376.
- Felsenstein J. (2001) Taking variation of evolutionary rates between sites into account in inferring phylogenies. *Journal of molecular evolution*, **53**, 447-455.
- Fitch, W. M. (1971) Toward defining the course of evolution: minimum change for a specified tree topology. *Systematic Zoology*, **20**:406-416.
- Gonnet, G. H. (2012) Surprising results on phylogenetic tree building methods based on molecular sequences. *BMC Bioinformatics*, **13**, 148.
- Makarenkov V., and Lapointe, F. (2004) A weighted least-squares approach for inferring phylogenies from incomplete distance matrices. *Bioinformatics*, **20**(13), 2113-2121.
- Pauplin, Y. (2000) Direct Calculation of a Tree Length Using a Distance Matrix. *J Mol Evol*, **51**(1), 41-47.
- Saitou, N. and Nei, M. (1987) The neighbor-joining method: a new method for reconstructing phylogenetic trees. *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, **4**(4), 406-425.
- Sankoff, D. (1975) Minimal mutation trees of sequences. *SIAM Journal of Applied Math*, **28**.
- Spirin, S., *et al.* (2024) PhyloBench: A Benchmark for Evaluating Phylogenetic Programs. *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, **41**(6), 1-11.

## See Also

[Clusterize](#), [Cophenetic](#), [DistanceMatrix](#), [MapCharacters](#), [MODELS](#), [ReadDendrogram](#), [WriteDendrogram](#)

## Examples

```
# using the matrix from the original paper by Saitou and Nei (1987)
m <- matrix(0,8,8) # only the lower triangle is used
m[2:8,1] <- c(7, 8, 11, 13, 16, 13, 17)
m[3:8,2] <- c(5, 8, 10, 13, 10, 14)
m[4:8,3] <- c(5, 7, 10, 7, 11)
m[5:8,4] <- c(8, 11, 8, 12)
m[6:8,5] <- c(5, 6, 10)
m[7:8,6] <- c(9, 13)
m[8,7] <- 8

# returns an object of class "dendrogram"
tree <- Treeline(myDistMatrix=m, cutoff=10, method="NJ", showPlot=TRUE)

# example of specifying multiple cutoffs
clusters <- Treeline(myDistMatrix=m, method="UPGMA", type="clusters", cutoff=c(2,6,10,20))
head(clusters)

# example of creating a complete-linkage tree from an alignment
fas <- system.file("extdata", "50S_ribosomal_protein_L2.fas", package="DECIPHER")
dna <- readDNAStrngSet(fas)
```

```

alignments <- AlignTranslation(dna, verbose=FALSE, type="both")
dna <- alignments[[1]]
aa <- alignments[[2]]
dna # input alignment
d <- DistanceMatrix(dna, type="dist") # returns an object of class 'dist'
complete <- Treeline(myDistMatrix=d, method="complete", cutoff=0.05, showPlot=TRUE)

# example of minimum evolution (ME) tree optimization (the default)
treeME <- Treeline(dna, processors=1L) # the recommended way to build trees
plot(treeME)

# compare the distance matrix to the cophenetic (patristic) distance matrix
plot(d, Cophenetic(treeME),
     xlab="Pairwise distance", ylab="Patristic distance",
     asp=1, pch=46, col="#00000033")
abline(a=0, b=1)

# example of maximum parsimony (MP) tree optimization
costs <- matrix(c(0, 2, 1, 2, 2, 0, 2, 1, 1, 2, 0, 2, 2, 1, 2, 0), 4)
dimnames(costs) <- list(DNA_BASES, DNA_BASES)
costs # the cost matrix
treeMP <- Treeline(dna, method="MP", reconstruct=TRUE, costMatrix=costs, maxTime=0.001)

# display ancestral states on each edge
start <- 50 # starting position in alignment
end <- 52 # ending position in alignment
tree <- dendrapply(treeMP,
  function(x) {
    attr(x, "edgetext") <- substring(attr(x, "state"),
      start,
      end)
    x
  })
plot(tree,
  edgePar=list(p.col=NA,
    p.border=NA,
    t.col=c("#AA3355", "#33FFFF")),
  edge.root=FALSE,
  leaflab="none")

# example of maximum likelihood tree optimization
treeML <- Treeline(head(dna, 10), method="ML", reconstruct=TRUE, maxTime=0.001)

# example of accessing and using the attributes
attributes(treeML) # show all attributes at a node
plot(dendrapply(treeML,
  function(x) {
    s <- attr(x, "probability")
    if (!is.null(s))
      attr(x, "edgetext") <- formatC(as.numeric(s), digits=2, format="f")
    attr(x, "edgePar") <- list(p.col=NA, p.border=NA, t.col="#CC55AA", t.cex=0.7)
    x
  })),

```

```

horiz=TRUE)

# construct a tanglegram comparing two trees back-to-back
layout(matrix(1:2, ncol=2))
tree1 <- treeME # tree on left
tree2 <- treeMP # tree on right
tree1 <- reorder(tree1, unlist(tree1))
tree2 <- reorder(tree2, unlist(tree2))
layout(matrix(1:2, nrow=1))
par(mai=c(0.5, 0, 0.5, 0.5)) # add space on right
plot(tree1,
      main="First tree",
      horiz=TRUE, leaflab="none")
par(mai=c(0.5, 0.5, 0.5, 0)) # add space on left
plot(tree2,
      main="Second tree",
      horiz=TRUE, leaflab="none",
      xlim=c(0, attr(tree2, "height")))
segments(par("usr")[1] - 1.05*diff(grconvertX(0:1, 'inches', 'user')),
         match(unlist(tree2), unlist(tree1)),
         -0.05*diff(grconvertX(0:1, 'inches', 'user')),
         seq_len(attr(tree2, "members")),
         xpd=NA)

# example of supplying an amino acid cost matrix for MP
codons <- getGeneticCode("1") # the standard genetic code
codons <- tapply(names(codons), codons, c)
costs <- outer(codons,
              codons,
              function(x, y)
                mapply(function(x, y) mean(adist(x, y)), x, y))
costs # minimum number of nucleotide changes to switch amino acids
treeMP_AA1 <- Treeline(aa, method="MP", costMatrix=costs, maxTime=0.001)
plot(Cophenetic(treeMP_AA1), Cophenetic(treeMP))

# alternative approach to obtaining an amino acid cost matrix
data(BLOSUM)
subM <- BLOSUM[AA_STANDARD, AA_STANDARD, "62"] # BLOSUM62 matrix
subM <- diag(subM) - subM # standardize to diagonal = 0
subM <- (subM + t(subM))/2 # make symmetric
treeMP_AA2 <- Treeline(aa, method="MP", costMatrix=subM, maxTime=0.001)
plot(Cophenetic(treeMP_AA1), Cophenetic(treeMP_AA2)) # different lengths

```

**Description**

Aids in trimming DNA sequences to the high quality region between a set of patterns that are potentially present on the left and right sides.

**Usage**

```
TrimDNA(myDNAStringSet,
        leftPatterns,
        rightPatterns,
        type = "ranges",
        quality = NULL,
        maxDistance = 0.1,
        minOverlap = 5,
        allowInternal = TRUE,
        alpha = 0.1,
        threshold = 0.01,
        maxAverageError = threshold,
        maxAmbiguities = 0.1,
        minWidth = 36,
        verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| myDNAStringSet | A DNAStringSet or QualityScaledDNAStringSet object containing the sequences to be trimmed. If "type" is "sequences" then the output class will match the class of myXStringSet. Note that the qualities of a QualityScaledDNAStringSet are ignored because the quality argument must be supplied separately. |
| leftPatterns   | A DNAStringSet or character vector of patterns to remove from the left side of myDNAStringSet, or "" to prevent trimming patterns on the left.   |
| rightPatterns  | A DNAStringSet or character vector of patterns to remove from the right side of myDNAStringSet, or "" to prevent trimming patterns on the right.   |
| type           | Character string indicating the type of results desired. This should be (an abbreviation of) either "ranges", "sequences" or "both".   |
| quality        | Either NULL (the default) to skip quality trimming, or a PhredQuality, SolexaQuality, or IlluminaQuality object containing the quality scores corresponding to myDNAStringSet.   |
| maxDistance    | Numeric between zero and one giving the maximum distance of a match from the leftPatterns and rightPatterns to initiate trimming. For example, 0.1 (the default) would allow up to 10% mismatches between a pattern and sequence.  |
| minOverlap     | Integer specifying the minimum number of nucleotides the leftPatterns and rightPatterns must overlap a sequence to initiate trimming.  |
| allowInternal  | Logical initiating whether to search for the leftPatterns and rightPatterns within myDNAStringSet, or (FALSE for) only overlapping the ends.   |
| alpha          | Numeric between zero and one giving the smoothing parameter for an exponential moving average that is applied to the quality scores before trimming. Higher values result in less smoothing than lower values.   |
| threshold      | Numeric between zero and one specifying the threshold above which to trim the poor quality regions of the sequence. Higher values allow more sequence to be preserved at the expense of a greater error rate.  |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code>maxAverageError</code> | Numeric between zero and <code>threshold</code> indicating the maximum average error rate of the trimmed region of the sequence. Trimmed sequences with average error rates above <code>maxAverageError</code> will be rejected. Note that the expected number of errors in a sequence is equal to the average error rate multiplied by the length of the sequence. |
| <code>maxAmbiguities</code>  | Numeric between zero and one giving the maximum fraction of ambiguous (e.g., "N") positions that are tolerated within the trimmed region of the sequence. Trimmed sequences with a greater fraction of ambiguities than <code>maxAmbiguities</code> will be rejected.   |
| <code>minWidth</code>        | Integer giving the minimum number of nucleotides a pattern must overlap the sequence to initiate trimming.  |
| <code>verbose</code>         | Logical indicating whether to display progress.   |

## Details

After a sequencing run, it is often necessary to trim the resulting sequences to the high quality region located between a set of patterns. TrimDNA works as follows: first left and right patterns are identified within the sequences if `allowInternal` is `TRUE` (the default). If the patterns are not found internally, then a search is conducted at the flanking ends for patterns that partially overlap the sequence. The region between the `leftPatterns` and `rightPatterns` is then returned, unless quality information is provided. Note that the patterns must be in the same orientation as the sequence, which may require using the `reverseComplement` of a PCR primer.

If `quality` contains quality scores, these are converted to error probabilities and an exponential moving average is applied to smooth the signal. The longest region between the `leftPatterns` and `rightPatterns` where the average error probability is below `threshold` is then returned, so long as it has an average error rate of at most `maxAverageError`. Note that it is possible to only filter by `maxAverageError` by setting `threshold` to 1, or vice-versa by setting `maxAverageError` to the same value as `threshold`.

## Value

TrimDNA can return two types of results: `IRanges` that can be used for trimming `myDNAStrngSet`, or a trimmed `DNAStrngSet` or `QualityScaledDNAStrngSet` containing only those sequences over `minWidth` nucleotides after trimming. Note that ambiguity codes (`IUPAC_CODE_MAP`) are supported in the `leftPatterns` and `rightPatterns`, but not in `myDNAStrngSet` to prevent trivial matches (e.g., runs of N's).

If `type` is `"ranges"` (the default) the output is an `IRanges` object with the start, end, and width of every sequence. This information can be accessed with the corresponding accessor function (see examples below). Note that the start will be 1 and the end will be 0 for sequences that were not at least `minWidth` nucleotides after trimming.

If `type` is `"sequences"` then the trimmed sequences are returned that are at least `minWidth` nucleotides in length.

If `type` is `"both"` the output is a list of two components, the first containing the ranges and the second containing the sequences.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**See Also**

[CorrectFrameshifts](#)

**Examples**

```
# simple example of trimming a single sequence
dna <- DNASTringSet("AAAAAAAAAATTACTTCCCCCCCC")
qscores <- PhredQuality("0000000000AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA")

x <- TrimDNA(dna,
             leftPatterns="AAAAAA",
             rightPatterns="CCCCC",
             quality=qscores,
             minWidth=1,
             allowInternal=TRUE,
             type="both")

x[[1]]
start(x[[1]])
end(x[[1]])
width(x[[1]])
subseq(dna, start(x[[1]]), end(x[[1]]))
x[[2]]

# example of trimming a FASTQ file by quality scores
fpath <- system.file("extdata",
                    "s_1_sequence.txt",
                    package="Biostrings")
reads <- readQualityScaledDNASTringSet(fpath)
trimmed <- TrimDNA(reads,
                  leftPatterns="",
                  rightPatterns="",
                  type="sequences",
                  quality=quality(reads))
trimmed
DNASTringSet(trimmed) # drop the qualities
```

---

WriteDendrogram

*Write a Dendrogram to Newick Format*

---

**Description**

Writes a dendrogram object to a file in Newick (also known as New Hampshire) parenthetic format.

**Usage**

```
WriteDendrogram(x,  
                file = "",  
                quote = "'",  
                space = " ",  
                internalLabels = TRUE,  
                digits = 10,  
                append = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| x              | An object of class dendrogram.  |
| file           | A connection or a character string naming the file path where the tree should be exported. If "" (the default), the tree is printed to the standard output connection, the console unless redirected by sink. |
| quote          | A single character used to quote labels, or an empty character string (i.e., "") to avoid quoting labels.   |
| space          | A single character (e.g., "_") used to replace spaces in labels, or a space (i.e., " ") to leave spaces intact.   |
| internalLabels | Logical indicating whether to write any "edgetext" preceding a node as an internal node label.  |
| digits         | The maximum number of digits to print for edge lengths.   |
| append         | Logical indicating whether to append to an existing file. Only applicable if file is a character string. If FALSE (the default), then the file is overwritten.  |

**Details**

WriteDendrogram will write a dendrogram object to a file in standard Newick format. Note that special characters (commas, square brackets, colons, semi-colons, and parentheses) present in leaf labels will likely cause a broken Newick file unless quote is a single or double quotation mark (the default).

**Value**

NULL.

**Author(s)**

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

**See Also**

[Treeline](#), [ReadDendrogram](#)

### Examples

```
dists <- matrix(c(0, 10, 20, 10, 0, 5, 20, 5, 0),
               nrow=3,
               dimnames=list(c("dog", "elephant", "horse")))
dend <- Treeline(myDistMatrix=dists, method="NJ")
WriteDendrogram(dend)
```

---

WriteGenes

*Write Genes to a File*

---

### Description

Writes predicted genes to a file in GenBank (gbk) or general feature format (gff).

### Usage

```
WriteGenes(x,
           file = "",
           format = "gbk",
           append = FALSE)
```

### Arguments

|        |   |
|--------|---|
| x      | An object of class Genes.   |
| file   | A connection or a character string naming the file path where the tree should be exported. If "" (the default), the tree is printed to the standard output connection, the console unless redirected by sink. |
| format | Character specifying "gbk" or "gff" output format.  |
| append | Logical indicating whether to append to an existing file. Only applicable if file is a character string. If FALSE (the default), then the file is overwritten.  |

### Details

WriteGenes will write a "Genes" object to a GenBank (if format is "gbk") or general feature format (if format is "gff") file.

### Value

NULL.

### Author(s)

Erik Wright <eswright@pitt.edu>

### See Also

[ExtractGenes](#), [FindGenes](#), [Genes-class](#)



**Examples**

```
# import a test genome
fas <- system.file("extdata",
  "Chlamydia_trachomatis_NC_000117.fas.gz",
  package="DECIPHER")
genome <- readDNASTringSet(fas)

x <- FindGenes(genome)
WriteGenes(x[1:10,], format="gbk")
WriteGenes(x[1:10,], format="gff")
```

# Index

## \* datasets

BLOSUM, 31  
deltaGrules, 60  
deltaGrulesRNA, 61  
deltaHrules, 62  
deltaHrulesRNA, 63  
deltaSrules, 64  
deltaSrulesRNA, 65  
HEC\_MI, 105  
MIQS, 130  
MMLSUM, 131  
NonCodingRNA, 138  
PAM, 141  
PFASUM, 142  
RESTRICTION\_ENZYMES, 151  
TrainingSet\_16S, 171

## \* data

AA\_REDUCED, 6  
MODELS, 132

## \* package

DECIPHER-package, 4  
[.Genes (Genes), 103  
[.Synteny (Synteny), 163  
[.Taxa (Taxa), 166

AA\_REDUCED, 6, 47  
Add2DB, 7, 95, 111  
AdjustAlignment, 9, 24, 163  
AlignDB, 11, 21, 24, 27  
AlignPairs, 14, 116, 158  
AlignProfiles, 10, 13, 16, 17, 23–25, 27  
AlignSeqs, 10, 13, 21, 21, 26, 27, 127, 151, 153, 163  
AlignSynteny, 21, 24, 24, 27, 81, 102, 165  
AlignTranslation, 10, 13, 21, 24, 26, 55  
AmplifyDNA, 28, 43, 71, 78, 130  
Array2Matrix, 30, 68, 137  
as.dist.Synteny (Synteny), 163  
  
BLOSUM, 31

BrowseDB, 8, 32, 35, 161  
BrowseSeqs, 33, 34  
  
c.Taxa (Taxa), 166  
CalculateEfficiencyArray, 38  
CalculateEfficiencyFISH, 40, 74  
CalculateEfficiencyPCR, 29, 30, 41, 71, 78, 130  
Clusterize, 43, 177  
Codec, 12, 48, 160  
ConsensusSequence, 35, 49, 85, 107  
Cophenetic, 52, 177  
CorrectFrameshifts, 27, 53, 140, 182  
CreateChimeras, 56, 95  
  
DB2Seqs, 58, 156, 161  
DECIPHER (DECIPHER-package), 4  
DECIPHER-package, 4  
deltaGrules, 39, 60  
deltaGrulesRNA, 61, 144  
deltaHrules, 62  
deltaHrulesRNA, 63  
deltaSrules, 64  
deltaSrulesRNA, 65  
DesignArray, 31, 66, 137  
DesignPrimers, 30, 43, 68, 78, 171  
DesignProbes, 41, 72  
DesignSignatures, 30, 43, 71, 75, 84, 130  
DetectRepeats, 79  
DigestDNA, 78, 83  
Disambiguate, 40, 43, 51, 78, 84  
DistanceMatrix, 47, 86, 136, 177  
  
ExtractGenes, 92, 97, 99, 105, 184  
  
FindChimeras, 57, 93  
FindGenes, 93, 96, 105, 184  
FindNonCoding, 97, 98, 119, 138  
FindSynteny, 7, 25, 81, 99, 165  
FormGroups, 102, 109

- Genes, [103](#)
- Genes-class (Genes), [103](#)
  
- HEC\_MI, [105](#)
- HEC\_MI1, [149](#)
- HEC\_MI1 (HEC\_MI), [105](#)
- HEC\_MI2, [149](#)
- HEC\_MI2 (HEC\_MI), [105](#)
  
- IdConsensus, [51](#), [107](#)
- IdentifyByRank, [103](#), [108](#)
- IdLengths, [110](#), [169](#)
- IdTaxa, [111](#), [121](#), [123](#), [168](#)
- IndexSeqs, [16](#), [114](#), [117](#), [158](#)
- InvertedIndex, [117](#)
- InvertedIndex-class (InvertedIndex), [117](#)
  
- LearnNonCoding, [99](#), [118](#), [138](#)
- LearnTaxa, [7](#), [113](#), [120](#), [168](#), [171](#)
  
- MapCharacters, [123](#), [177](#)
- MaskAlignment, [126](#)
- MeltDNA, [30](#), [78](#), [128](#)
- MIQS, [21](#), [130](#)
- MMLSUM, [131](#)
- MODELS, [89](#), [132](#), [177](#)
  
  
- NNLS, [31](#), [68](#), [136](#)
- NonCoding, [137](#)
- NonCoding-class (NonCoding), [137](#)
- NonCodingRNA, [138](#)
- NonCodingRNA\_Archaea (NonCodingRNA), [138](#)
- NonCodingRNA\_Bacteria (NonCodingRNA), [138](#)
- NonCodingRNA\_Eukarya (NonCodingRNA), [138](#)
  
- OrientNucleotides, [55](#), [139](#)
  
  
- pairs.Synteny (Synteny), [163](#)
- PAM, [141](#)
- PFASUM, [7](#), [10](#), [13](#), [21](#), [55](#), [142](#), [153](#)
- plot.Genes (Genes), [103](#)
- plot.Synteny (Synteny), [163](#)
- plot.Taxa (Taxa), [166](#)
- PredictDBN, [143](#), [149](#)
- PredictHEC, [146](#), [147](#)
- print.Genes (Genes), [103](#)
- print.InvertedIndex (InvertedIndex), [117](#)
- print.NonCoding (NonCoding), [137](#)
- print.Synteny (Synteny), [163](#)
  
  
- print.Taxa (Taxa), [166](#)
  
- ReadDendrogram, [24](#), [149](#), [177](#), [183](#)
- RemoveGaps, [150](#)
- RESTRICTION\_ENZYMES, [76](#), [78](#), [84](#), [151](#)
  
- ScoreAlignment, [82](#), [152](#)
- SearchDB, [8](#), [154](#), [161](#)
- SearchIndex, [16](#), [116](#), [117](#), [156](#)
- Seqs2DB, [8](#), [57](#), [108](#), [156](#), [159](#)
- StaggerAlignment, [10](#), [24](#), [161](#)
- Synteny, [163](#)
- Synteny-class (Synteny), [163](#)
  
- Taxa, [166](#)
- Taxa-class (Taxa), [166](#)
- TerminalChar, [168](#)
- TileSeqs, [41](#), [71](#), [74](#), [169](#)
- TrainingSet\_16S, [171](#)
- TreeLine (Treeline), [172](#)
- Treeline, [24](#), [47](#), [52](#), [89](#), [124](#), [127](#), [136](#), [150](#), [162](#), [163](#), [172](#), [183](#)
- TrimDNA, [179](#)
  
- WriteDendrogram, [150](#), [177](#), [182](#)
- WriteGenes, [93](#), [97](#), [99](#), [105](#), [184](#)